

TRACK ACCESS CONTRACT  
(NON-FRANCHISED PASSENGER SERVICES)

Dated

1 August 2014

Between

NETWORK RAIL INFRASTRUCTURE LIMITED

and

GRAND CENTRAL RAILWAY COMPANY LIMITED

**Conformed copy as at 03 March 2017**

**Amended by:**

1. 1<sup>st</sup> Supplemental Agreement dated 27 October 2014
2. 3<sup>rd</sup> Supplemental Agreement dated 5 August 2015
3. 5<sup>th</sup> Supplemental Agreement dated 20 May 2016
4. 2<sup>nd</sup> Supplemental Agreement dated 03 March 2017

## **CONTENTS**

| <b>Clause</b> |                                                                        | <b>Page</b> |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>1</b>      | <b>INTERPRETATION</b>                                                  | <b>1</b>    |
|               | 1.1 Definitions                                                        | 1           |
|               | 1.2 Interpretation                                                     | 6           |
|               | 1.3 Indemnities                                                        | 7           |
| <b>2</b>      | <b>NETWORK CODE</b>                                                    | <b>7</b>    |
|               | 2.1 Incorporation                                                      | 7           |
|               | 2.2 Modifications to the Network Code                                  | 7           |
|               | 2.3 Compliance by other operators                                      | 7           |
| <b>3</b>      | <b>CONDITIONS PRECEDENT AND DURATION</b>                               | <b>8</b>    |
|               | 3.1 Effective date                                                     | 8           |
|               | 3.2 Conditions precedent to Clause 5                                   | 8           |
|               | 3.3 Obligations to satisfy conditions precedent to Clause 5            | 8           |
|               | 3.4 Consequences of non-fulfilment of conditions precedent to Clause 5 | 9           |
|               | 3.5 Expiry                                                             | 9           |
|               | 3.6 Suspension and termination                                         | 9           |
| <b>4</b>      | <b>STANDARD OF PERFORMANCE</b>                                         | <b>10</b>   |
|               | 4.1 General standard                                                   | 10          |
|               | 4.2 Good faith                                                         | 10          |
| <b>5</b>      | <b>PERMISSION TO USE</b>                                               | <b>10</b>   |
|               | 5.1 Permission to use the Routes                                       | 10          |
|               | 5.2 Meaning                                                            | 10          |
|               | 5.3 Permission under Clauses 5.2(e) and 5.2(f)                         | 11          |

|     |                                                                                            |    |
|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 5.4 | Changes to Applicable Engineering Access Statement and Applicable Timetable Planning Rules | 11 |
| 5.5 | Engineering Access Statement, Timetable Planning Rules and Restrictions of Use             | 11 |
| 5.6 | The Services and the Specified Equipment                                                   | 11 |
| 5.7 | Performance                                                                                | 12 |
| 5.8 | Stabling                                                                                   | 12 |
| 6   | OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF TRAINS AND NETWORK                                            | 12 |
| 6.1 | General                                                                                    | 12 |
| 6.2 | Trespass, vandalism and animals                                                            | 12 |
| 6.3 | Safety                                                                                     | 12 |
| 6.4 | Use of Railway Code Systems                                                                | 13 |
|     | 6.4.1 General                                                                              | 13 |
|     | 6.4.2 Provision of Train Consist Data                                                      | 13 |
| 7   | TRACK CHARGES AND OTHER PAYMENTS                                                           | 13 |
| 8   | LIABILITY                                                                                  | 13 |
|     | 8.1 Performance Orders in relation to breach                                               | 13 |
|     | 8.2 Compensation in relation to breach                                                     | 13 |
| 9   | NOT USED                                                                                   | 13 |
| 10  | LIABILITY - OTHER MATTERS                                                                  | 13 |
|     | 10.1 Train Operator indemnity                                                              | 13 |
|     | 10.2 Network Rail indemnity                                                                | 14 |
| 11  | RESTRICTIONS ON CLAIMS                                                                     | 14 |
|     | 11.1 Notification and mitigation                                                           | 14 |
|     | 11.2 Restrictions on claims by Network Rail                                                | 14 |

|        |                                                               |    |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 11.3   | Restrictions on claims by Train Operator                      | 15 |
| 11.4   | Restriction on claims by both parties                         | 15 |
| 11.5   | Limitation on liability                                       | 16 |
| 11.6   | Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement                      | 16 |
| 11.6.1 | <i>General</i>                                                | 16 |
| 11.6.2 | <i>Restriction of application</i>                             | 16 |
| 11.6.3 | <i>Liability for small claims</i>                             | 16 |
| 12     | GOVERNING LAW                                                 | 16 |
| 13     | DISPUTE RESOLUTION                                            | 16 |
| 13.1   | ADRR                                                          | 16 |
| 13.2   | Unpaid sums                                                   | 17 |
| 13.3   | Performance Orders                                            | 17 |
| 13.3.1 | <i>Power to order provisional relief</i>                      | 17 |
| 13.3.2 | <i>Performance Orders</i>                                     | 17 |
| 13.3.3 | <i>Duties of arbitrator in relation to Performance Orders</i> | 18 |
| 13.4   | Remedies                                                      | 18 |
| 13.5   | Exclusion of applications on preliminary points of law        | 18 |
| 14     | CONFIDENTIALITY                                               | 18 |
| 14.1   | Confidential Information                                      | 18 |
| 14.1.1 | <i>General obligation</i>                                     | 18 |
| 14.1.2 | <i>Network Rail - Affiliates</i>                              | 19 |
| 14.1.3 | <i>Train Operator - Affiliates</i>                            | 19 |
| 14.2   | Entitlement to divulge                                        | 19 |
| 14.3   | Return of Confidential Information                            | 20 |
| 14.4   | Retention or destruction of Confidential Information          | 20 |

|        |                                                                    |    |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 14.5   | Ownership of Confidential Information                              | 20 |
| 14.6   | Network Code and Schedule 7                                        | 20 |
| 15     | ASSIGNMENT AND NOVATION                                            | 20 |
| 15.1   | Assignment                                                         | 20 |
| 15.2   | Novation                                                           | 21 |
| 15.3   | Novation terms                                                     | 21 |
| 16     | PAYMENTS, INTEREST AND VAT                                         | 21 |
| 16.1   | Payment                                                            | 21 |
| 16.1.1 | <i>No deduction</i>                                                | 21 |
| 16.1.2 | <i>Delivery of invoices</i>                                        | 21 |
| 16.1.3 | <i>Content of invoices and other statements of amounts payable</i> | 22 |
| 16.1.4 | <i>Method of payment</i>                                           | 22 |
| 16.2   | Interest                                                           | 22 |
| 16.3   | VAT                                                                | 22 |
| 16.3.1 | <i>Payment of VAT</i>                                              | 22 |
| 16.3.2 | <i>Reimbursement of VAT</i>                                        | 22 |
| 16.3.3 | <i>VAT credit note to be issued on repayment</i>                   | 22 |
| 17     | FORCE MAJEURE EVENTS                                               | 23 |
| 17.1   | Meaning of Force Majeure Event                                     | 23 |
| 17.2   | Nature and extent of relief for Force Majeure                      | 23 |
| 17.3   | Entitlement to Force Majeure relief                                | 24 |
| 17.4   | Procedure for claiming relief                                      | 24 |
| 17.5   | Force Majeure Notices and Reports                                  | 24 |
| 17.5.1 | <i>Force Majeure Notice</i>                                        | 24 |
| 17.5.2 | <i>Force Majeure Report</i>                                        | 25 |

|             |                                                                     |           |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| 17.5.3      | <i>Other information</i>                                            | 25        |
| <b>17.6</b> | <b>Mitigation</b>                                                   | <b>25</b> |
| <b>17.7</b> | <b>Duration of relief for force majeure</b>                         | <b>25</b> |
| <b>17.8</b> | <b>Availability of Performance Order</b>                            | <b>26</b> |
| <b>18</b>   | <b>MISCELLANEOUS</b>                                                | <b>26</b> |
| <b>18.1</b> | <b>Non waiver</b>                                                   | <b>26</b> |
| 18.1.1      | <i>No waiver</i>                                                    | 26        |
| 18.1.2      | <i>Failure or delay in exercising a right or remedy</i>             | 26        |
| <b>18.2</b> | <b>Variations</b>                                                   | <b>26</b> |
| 18.2.1      | <i>Amendments to be in writing and to be approved</i>               | 26        |
| 18.2.2      | <i>Exceptions</i>                                                   | 26        |
| 18.2.3      | <i>No Office of Rail Regulation approval needed</i>                 | 27        |
| 18.2.4      | <i>Conformed copy of contract</i>                                   | 27        |
| <b>18.3</b> | <b>Entire contract and exclusive remedies</b>                       | <b>27</b> |
| 18.3.1      | <i>Entire contract</i>                                              | 27        |
| 18.3.2      | <i>Exclusive remedies</i>                                           | 27        |
| 18.3.3      | <i>Fraud, death and personal injury</i>                             | 28        |
| <b>18.4</b> | <b>Notices</b>                                                      | <b>28</b> |
| 18.4.1      | <i>Giving of notices</i>                                            | 28        |
| 18.4.2      | <i>Right to modify registered company and communication details</i> | 28        |
| 18.4.3      | <i>Deemed receipt</i>                                               | 29        |
| 18.4.4      | <i>Copyees</i>                                                      | 29        |
| <b>18.5</b> | <b>Counterparts</b>                                                 | <b>29</b> |
| <b>18.6</b> | <b>Survival</b>                                                     | <b>29</b> |
| <b>18.7</b> | <b>Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999</b>                 | <b>29</b> |

|                                                                                                       |                                                                   |                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 18.7.1                                                                                                | <i>Application to third parties</i>                               | 29                                  |
| 18.7.2                                                                                                | <i>Application to the Office of Rail Regulation</i>               | 30                                  |
| 18.7.3                                                                                                | <i>Not Used</i>                                                   | 30                                  |
| <b>19</b>                                                                                             | <b>TRANSITION</b>                                                 | <b>30</b>                           |
| 19.1                                                                                                  | <b>Corresponding Rights</b>                                       | <b>30</b>                           |
| 19.2                                                                                                  | <b>Definitions</b>                                                | <b>31</b>                           |
| <b>SCHEDULE 1: CONTACT PARTICULARS</b>                                                                |                                                                   | <b>ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED.</b> |
| <b>SCHEDULE 2: THE ROUTES</b>                                                                         |                                                                   | <b>33</b>                           |
| <b>SCHEDULE 3: COLLATERAL AGREEMENTS</b>                                                              |                                                                   | <b>34</b>                           |
| <b>SCHEDULE 4: ENGINEERING ACCESS STATEMENT, TIMETABLE PLANNING<br/>RULES AND RESTRICTIONS OF USE</b> |                                                                   | <b>35</b>                           |
| <b>SCHEDULE 5: THE SERVICES AND THE SPECIFIED EQUIPMENT</b>                                           |                                                                   | <b>85</b>                           |
| <b>SCHEDULE 6: EVENTS OF DEFAULT, SUSPENSION AND TERMINATION</b>                                      |                                                                   | <b>116</b>                          |
| <b>1</b>                                                                                              | <b>Events of Default</b>                                          | <b>116</b>                          |
| 1.1                                                                                                   | <i>Train Operator Events of Default</i>                           | 116                                 |
| 1.2                                                                                                   | <i>Notification</i>                                               | 116                                 |
| 1.3                                                                                                   | <i>Network Rail Events of Default</i>                             | 116                                 |
| 1.4                                                                                                   | <i>Notification</i>                                               | 117                                 |
| <b>2</b>                                                                                              | <b>Suspension</b>                                                 | <b>117</b>                          |
| 2.1                                                                                                   | <i>Right to suspend</i>                                           | 117                                 |
| 2.2                                                                                                   | <i>Contents of Suspension Notice</i>                              | 117                                 |
| 2.3                                                                                                   | <i>Effect of Suspension Notice served by Network Rail</i>         | 118                                 |
| 2.4                                                                                                   | <i>Effect of a Suspension Notice served by the Train Operator</i> | 118                                 |
| 2.5                                                                                                   | <i>Suspension to be proportionate to breach</i>                   | 119                                 |



|          |                                                             |            |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>3</b> | <b>Termination</b>                                          | <b>120</b> |
| 3.1      | <i>Network Rail's right to terminate</i>                    | 120        |
| 3.2      | <i>Train Operator's right to terminate</i>                  | 120        |
| 3.3      | <i>Contents of Termination Notice</i>                       | 120        |
| 3.4      | <i>Effect of Termination Notice</i>                         | 121        |
| <b>4</b> | <b>Consequence of termination</b>                           | <b>121</b> |
| 4.1      | <i>Directions regarding location of Specified Equipment</i> | 121        |
| 4.2      | <i>Failure to comply with directions</i>                    | 121        |
| 4.3      | <i>Evidence of costs</i>                                    | 121        |
|          | <b>SCHEDULE 7: TRACK CHARGES AND OTHER PAYMENTS</b>         | <b>122</b> |
|          | <b>PART 1: INTERPRETATION</b>                               | <b>122</b> |
| <b>1</b> | <b>Definitions</b>                                          | <b>122</b> |
|          | <b>PART 2: TRACK CHARGES</b>                                | <b>128</b> |
| <b>1</b> | <b>Principal formula</b>                                    | <b>128</b> |
| <b>2</b> | <b>Not used.</b>                                            | <b>128</b> |
| <b>3</b> | <b>Variable Usage Charge</b>                                | <b>128</b> |
| <b>4</b> | <b>Not used.</b>                                            | <b>130</b> |
| <b>6</b> | <b>Capacity Charge and Capacity Charge Wash-up</b>          | <b>131</b> |
| <b>7</b> | <b>Not used.</b>                                            | <b>134</b> |
| <b>8</b> | <b>Not used.</b>                                            | <b>134</b> |

|                                                                                           |            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>PART 3: ROUTE-LEVEL EFFICIENCY BENEFIT SHARE MECHANISM</b>                             | <b>139</b> |
| <b>PART 3A: NOT USED</b>                                                                  | <b>144</b> |
| <b>PART 4: NOT USED</b>                                                                   | <b>144</b> |
| <b>PART 5: ADDITIONAL CHARGES</b>                                                         | <b>144</b> |
| <b>NOT USED</b>                                                                           | <b>144</b> |
| <b>PART 6: SUPPLEMENTAL PROVISIONS</b>                                                    | <b>144</b> |
| <b>PART 7: FUTURE ACCESS CHARGES REVIEWS</b>                                              | <b>145</b> |
| <b>1    General</b>                                                                       | <b>145</b> |
| <b>2    Not used.</b>                                                                     | <b>145</b> |
| <b>3    Interpretation</b>                                                                | <b>145</b> |
| <b>SCHEDULE 8: PERFORMANCE REGIME</b>                                                     | <b>150</b> |
| <b>1    Interpretation</b>                                                                | <b>150</b> |
| <i>1.1    Definitions</i>                                                                 | <i>150</i> |
| <i>1.2    Interpretation</i>                                                              | <i>152</i> |
| <i>1.3    Suspension Notices</i>                                                          | <i>153</i> |
| <b>2    Calculation of Minutes Late</b>                                                   | <b>153</b> |
| <b>3    Calculation of Minutes Delay</b>                                                  | <b>153</b> |
| <b>4    Recording of performance information</b>                                          | <b>154</b> |
| <i>4.1    Recording of lateness, Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops</i>                    | <i>154</i> |
| <i>4.2    Recording of allocated responsibility for Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops</i> | <i>155</i> |
| <i>4.3    Failed Recording Points</i>                                                     | <i>155</i> |
| <i>4.4    Provision of information by Train Operator</i>                                  | <i>155</i> |
| <b>5    Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops</b>            | <b>156</b> |

|           |                                                                                                            |            |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 5.1       | <i>Assessment of incidents causing Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops</i>                                   | 156        |
| 5.2       | <i>Network Rail responsibility incidents</i>                                                               | 156        |
| 5.3       | <i>Train Operator responsibility incidents</i>                                                             | 157        |
| 5.4       | <i>Joint responsibility incidents</i>                                                                      | 157        |
| 5.5       | <i>Unidentified incidents: Minutes Delay</i>                                                               | 158        |
| 5.6       | <i>Unidentified incidents: Cancelled Stops</i>                                                             | 158        |
| 5.7       | <i>Planned incidents</i>                                                                                   | 158        |
| 5.8       | <i>Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay at Service Group level: aggregate Minutes Delay</i>      | 159        |
| 5.9       | <i>Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay at Service Group level: Network Rail Minutes Delay</i>   | 159        |
| 5.10      | <i>Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay at Service Group level: Train Operator Minutes Delay</i> | 159        |
| 5.11      | <i>Network Rail Cancelled Stops at Monitoring Point level</i>                                              | 159        |
| 5.12      | <i>Train Operator Cancelled Stops at Monitoring Point level</i>                                            | 159        |
| <b>6</b>  | <b>Statement of allocated responsibility</b>                                                               | <b>159</b> |
| 6.1       | <i>Initial statement</i>                                                                                   | 159        |
| 6.2       | <i>Further statements</i>                                                                                  | 160        |
| 6.3       | <i>Adjustment statements</i>                                                                               | 160        |
| 6.4       | <i>Disputes about statements of allocated responsibility</i>                                               | 160        |
| <b>7</b>  | <b>Allocation of Minutes Late to Network Rail</b>                                                          | <b>161</b> |
| <b>8</b>  | <b>Allocation of Minutes Late to the Train Operator</b>                                                    | <b>161</b> |
| <b>9</b>  | <b>Network Rail Performance Sums</b>                                                                       | <b>162</b> |
| <b>10</b> | <b>Train Operator Performance Sums</b>                                                                     | <b>164</b> |
| <b>11</b> | <b>Notification of Performance Sums</b>                                                                    | <b>165</b> |
| 11.1      | <i>Notification</i>                                                                                        | 165        |

|           |                                                                 |            |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 11.2      | <i>Disputes</i>                                                 | 166        |
| <b>12</b> | <b>Payment procedures</b>                                       | <b>166</b> |
| 12.1      | <i>Payments and set-off</i>                                     | 166        |
| 12.2      | <i>Payments in the event of dispute</i>                         | 166        |
| <b>13</b> | <b>Payment rates</b>                                            | <b>167</b> |
| <b>14</b> | <b>Not Used</b>                                                 | <b>167</b> |
| <b>15</b> | <b>Notices</b>                                                  | <b>167</b> |
| <b>16</b> | <b>Disputes</b>                                                 | <b>168</b> |
| <b>17</b> | <b>Amendments to Appendix 1</b>                                 | <b>168</b> |
| 17.1      | <i>Circumstances in which parties agree to amend Appendix 1</i> | 168        |
| 17.2      | <i>Procedure for amendments to Appendix 1</i>                   | 168        |
| 17.3      | <i>Adjustments to the Performance Monitoring System</i>         | 170        |
| 17.4      | <i>Costs of implementing amendment</i>                          | 170        |
| <b>18</b> | <b>ETCS Amendments</b>                                          | <b>170</b> |
|           | <b>Appendix 1<sup>5th</sup></b>                                 | <b>172</b> |
|           | <b>Appendix 2</b>                                               | <b>174</b> |
|           | <b>SCHEDULE 9: LIMITATION ON LIABILITY</b>                      | <b>175</b> |
| <b>1</b>  | <b>Definitions</b>                                              | <b>175</b> |
| <b>2</b>  | <b>Application</b>                                              | <b>175</b> |
| <b>3</b>  | <b>Limitation on Network Rail's liability</b>                   | <b>175</b> |
| <b>4</b>  | <b>Limitation on Train Operator's liability</b>                 | <b>176</b> |
| <b>5</b>  | <b>Disapplication of limitation</b>                             | <b>176</b> |
| <b>6</b>  | <b>Exclusion of legal and other costs</b>                       | <b>176</b> |
| <b>7</b>  | <b>Exclusion of certain Relevant Losses</b>                     | <b>176</b> |
| <b>8</b>  | <b>Continuing breaches</b>                                      | <b>176</b> |

|          |                                                                                      |            |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>9</b> | <b>Final determination of claims</b>                                                 | <b>177</b> |
|          | <b>SCHEDULE 10: NETWORK CODE MODIFICATIONS</b>                                       | <b>178</b> |
| <b>1</b> | <b>Automatic effect</b>                                                              | <b>178</b> |
| 1.1      | <i>General</i>                                                                       | 178        |
| 1.2      | <i>Retrospective effect</i>                                                          | 178        |
| <b>2</b> | <b>Modification notice</b>                                                           | <b>178</b> |
| 2.1      | <i>Meaning</i>                                                                       | 178        |
| 2.2      | <i>Contents of modification notice</i>                                               | 178        |
| <b>3</b> | <b>Adaptation procedure</b>                                                          | <b>178</b> |
| 3.1      | <i>Application</i>                                                                   | 178        |
| 3.2      | <i>Negotiation of adaptations</i>                                                    | 178        |
| 3.3      | <i>Agreed adaptations - notice to the Office of Rail Regulation</i>                  | 179        |
| 3.4      | <i>Agreed adaptations – Office of Rail Regulation’s consent</i>                      | 179        |
| 3.5      | <i>Agreed requisite adaptations – Office of Rail Regulation’s refusal of consent</i> | 179        |
| 3.6      | <i>Requisite adaptations - failure to agree or submit</i>                            | 179        |
| 3.7      | <i>Notice of determined requisite adaptations</i>                                    | 180        |
| 3.8      | <i>Effect of requisite adaptations</i>                                               | 180        |
| <b>4</b> | <b>Procedural matters</b>                                                            | <b>180</b> |
| 4.1      | <i>More than one notice</i>                                                          | 180        |
| 4.2      | <i>Differences etc as to requisite adaptations</i>                                   | 180        |
| 4.3      | <i>Co-operation and information</i>                                                  | 180        |
| 4.4      | <i>Office of Rail Regulation’s criteria</i>                                          | 181        |
| 4.5      | <i>Procedural modifications</i>                                                      | 181        |
| 4.6      | <i>Dates</i>                                                                         | 181        |
| 4.7      | <i>Requirement for prior consultation</i>                                            | 181        |

|                                                             |                                          |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----|
| 4.8                                                         | <i>Consolidated contract</i>             | 182 |
| 4.9                                                         | <i>Saving</i>                            | 182 |
| 5                                                           | <b>Definitions</b>                       | 182 |
| <b>SCHEDULE 11: PROGRAMME OF WORKS SPECIFICATION</b>        |                                          | 184 |
|                                                             | <b>Works Relating to Class 180 Units</b> | 184 |
| <b>SCHEDULE 12: USE OF RAILWAYS INFRASTRUCTURE REOPENER</b> |                                          | 185 |
| <b>SCHEDULE 13: ERTMS COMPENSATION</b>                      |                                          | 186 |

THIS CONTRACT is made the                      day of

BETWEEN:

- (1) **NETWORK RAIL INFRASTRUCTURE LIMITED**, a company registered in England under number 2904587 having its registered office at Kings Place, 90 York Way, London, N1 9AG ("Network Rail"); and
- (2) **GRAND CENTRAL RAILWAY COMPANY LIMITED**, a company registered in England under number 3979826 having its registered office at 1 Admiral Way, Doxford International Business Park, Sunderland SR3 3XP (the "Train Operator").

WHEREAS:

- (A) Network Rail is the owner of the Network; and
- (B) Network Rail has been directed by ORR to grant to the Train Operator permission to use certain track comprised in the Network on the terms and conditions of this contract.

IT IS AGREED AS FOLLOWS:

## **1 INTERPRETATION**

### **1.1 Definitions**

In this contract unless the context otherwise requires:

**"Access Agreement"** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part A of the Network Code;

**"access charges review"** has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1(1) of Schedule 4A to the Act;

**"Access Dispute Resolution Rules"** and **"ADRR"** have the meaning ascribed to them in Part A of the Network Code;

**"Access Proposal"** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code;

**"Act"** means the Railways Act 1993;

**"Affected Party"** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 17.1;

**"Affiliate"** means, in relation to any company:

- (a) a company which is either a holding company or a subsidiary of such company; or
- (b) a company which is a subsidiary of a holding company of which such company is also a subsidiary,

and for these purposes “holding company” and “subsidiary” have the meanings ascribed to them in section 1159 of the Companies Act 2006;

**“Ancillary Movements”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code;

**“Applicable Engineering Access Statement”** means the Engineering Access Statement in force in respect of the Routes at the Principal Change Date in December 2013, as from time to time amended or replaced under Part D of the Network Code;

**“Applicable Timetable Planning Rules”** means the Timetable Planning Rules in force in respect of the Routes at the Principal Change Date in December 2013, as from time to time amended or replaced under Part D of the Network Code;

**“Applicable Timetable”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;

**“associate”** has the meaning ascribed to it in section 17 of the Act;

**“Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement”** means the agreement of that name approved by ORR;

**“Collateral Agreements”** means the agreements and arrangements listed in Schedule 3;

**“Confidential Information”** means information relating to the affairs of one party to this contract or any of its Affiliates which has been provided by any such person to the other party under or for the purposes of this contract, or any matter or thing contemplated by this contract or to which this contract relates, the disclosure of which is likely materially to compromise or otherwise prejudice the commercial interests of any such person;

**“contract”** means this document including all schedules and appendices to it and the Network Code;

**“Contract Year”** means each yearly period commencing on the Principal Change Date in December 2013 and subsequently on each anniversary of such date;

**“D-X”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code;

**“Default Interest Rate”** is two percent above the base lending rate of Barclays Bank PLC as varied from time to time;

**“Environmental Condition”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part E of the Network Code;

**“Environmental Damage”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part E of the Network Code;

**“European licence”** has the meaning ascribed to it in section 6(2) of the Act;

**“Event of Default”** means a Train Operator Event of Default or a Network Rail Event of Default;

**“Expiry Date”** means 01:59 on the Principal Change Date in 2026;



**“Force Majeure Event”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 17.1;

**“Force Majeure Notice”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 17.1;

**“Force Majeure Report”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 17.1;

**“Innocent Party”** means, in relation to a breach of an obligation under this contract, the party who is not in breach of that obligation;

**“Insolvency Event”**, in relation to either of the parties, has occurred where:

- (a) any step which has a reasonable prospect of success is taken by any person with a view to its administration under Part II of the Insolvency Act 1986;
- (b) it stops or suspends or threatens to stop or suspend payment of all or a material part of its debts, or is unable to pay its debts, or is deemed unable to pay its debts under section 123(1) or (2) of the Insolvency Act 1986, except that in the interpretation of this paragraph:
  - (i) section 123(1)(a) of the Insolvency Act 1986 shall have effect as if for “£750” there were substituted “£100,000” or such higher figure as the parties may agree in writing from time to time; and
  - (ii) it shall not be deemed to be unable to pay its debts for the purposes of this paragraph if any such demand as is mentioned in section 123(1)(a) of the Insolvency Act 1986 is satisfied before the expiry of 21 days from such demand;
- (c) its directors make any proposal under section 1 of the Insolvency Act 1986, or it makes any agreement for the deferral, rescheduling or other readjustment (or makes a general assignment or an arrangement or composition with or for the benefit of the relevant creditors) of all or a material part of its debts, or a moratorium is agreed or declared in respect of or affecting all or a material part of its debts;
- (d) any step is taken to enforce security over or a distress, execution or other similar process is levied or sued out against the whole or a substantial part of its assets or undertaking, including the appointment of a receiver, administrative receiver, manager or similar person to enforce that security;
- (e) any step is taken by any person with a view to its winding up or any person presents a winding-up petition which is not dismissed within 14 days, or it ceases or threatens to cease to carry on all or a material part of its business, except for the purpose of and followed by a reconstruction, amalgamation, reorganisation, merger or consolidation on terms approved by the other party before that step is taken (which approval shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed); or
- (f) any event occurs which, under the law of any relevant jurisdiction, has an analogous or equivalent effect to any of the events listed above,

unless:

- (i) in any case, a railway administration order (or application for such order) has been made or such order (or application) is made within 14 days after the occurrence of such step, event, proposal or action (as the case may be) in relation to the party in question under section 60, 61 or 62 of the Act and for so long as any such order (or application) remains in force or pending; or
- (ii) in the case of paragraphs (a), (d) and (e), the relevant petition, proceeding or other step is being actively contested in good faith by that party with timely recourse to all appropriate measures and procedures;

**“Investment Conditions”** means the conditions set out in Clause 3.7;

**“Liability Cap”** has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1 of Schedule 9;

**“Longstop Date”** means 31 December 2014;

**“Network”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part A of the Network Code;

**“Network Code”** means the document now known as the Network Code and formerly known as the Railtrack Track Access Conditions 1995;

**“Network Rail Event of Default”** has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1.3 of Schedule 6;

**“New Working Timetable”** means, in respect of any day, the version of the Working Timetable for that day provided by Network Rail in accordance with Condition D2.7.1, as amended pursuant to Condition D2.7.4;

**“Office of Rail Regulation”** has the meaning ascribed to it under section 15 of the Railways and Transport Safety Act 2003, and references to “ORR” shall be construed as references to the Office of Rail Regulation;

**“Performance Order”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 13.3.2;

**“Railway Code Systems”** means necessary systems within the meaning of the Systems Code;

**“railway facility”** has the meaning ascribed to it in section 83 of the Act;

**“relevant ADRR Forum”** means the Forum, having the meaning ascribed to it in the ADRR, to which a Relevant Dispute is allocated for resolution in accordance with the ADRR;

**“Relevant Dispute”** means any difference between the parties arising out of or in connection with this contract;

**“Relevant Force Majeure Event”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 17.1;

**“Relevant Losses”** means, in relation to:

- (a) a breach of this contract; or

(b) in the case of Clause 10, any of the matters specified in Clause 10.1(a), (b) or (c) or Clause 10.2(a), (b) or (c) (each a “breach” for the purpose of this definition); or

(c) in the case of Schedule 8, the matter specified in paragraph 18 of Schedule 8 (a “breach” for the purposes of this definition only),

all costs, losses (including loss of profit and loss of revenue), expenses, payments, damages, liabilities, interest and the amounts by which rights or entitlements to amounts have been reduced, in each case incurred or occasioned as a result of or by such breach;

**“Relevant Obligation”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Clause 17;

**“Rolled Over Access Proposal”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code;

**“Routes”** means that part of the Network specified in Schedule 2;

**“safety authorisation”** has the meaning ascribed to it by regulation 2 of the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations 2006;

**“safety certificate”** has the meaning ascribed to it by regulation 2 of the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations 2006;

**“Safety Obligations”** means all applicable obligations concerning health and safety (including any duty of care arising at common law, and any obligation arising under statute, statutory instrument or mandatory code of practice) in Great Britain;

**“Services”** means the railway passenger services specified in Schedule 5;

**“SNRP”** has the meaning ascribed to it in the Railways (Licensing of Railway Undertakings) Regulations 2005;

**“Specified Equipment”** means, in relation to each of the Routes, the railway vehicles which the Train Operator is entitled to use in the provision of Services on that Route as specified in Schedule 5;

**“SPP Threshold”** has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 18 of Schedule 8;

**“Stabling”** means the parking or laying up of the Specified Equipment or such other railway vehicles as the Train Operator is permitted by this contract to use on the Network, such parking or laying up being necessary or reasonably required for giving full effect to the movements of Specified Equipment required for the provision of the Services;

**“Suspension Notice”** means a notice in writing served by the relevant party on the other party under paragraph 2 of Schedule 6;

**“Systems Code”** means the code of practice relating to the management and development of railway code systems as amended from time to time in accordance with its terms;

**“Termination Notice”** means a notice in writing served by the relevant party on the other party under paragraph 3 of Schedule 6;

**“Timetable Participant”** shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code;

**“Track Charges”** means the charges payable by or on behalf of the Train Operator to Network Rail, as set out in or calculated under Part 2 of Schedule 7;

**“Train Consist Data”** means information as to the number(s) and type(s) of railway vehicle comprised in a train movement;

**“Train Operator Event of Default”** has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1.1 of Schedule 6;

**“Train Slot”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code;

**“TW-X”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code;

**“Value Added Tax”** means value added tax as provided for in the Value Added Tax Act 1994, and any tax similar or equivalent to value added tax or any turnover tax replacing or introduced in addition to them, and “VAT” shall be construed accordingly;

**“Working Day”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part A of the Network Code; and

**“Working Timetable”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Part A of the Network Code.

## **1.2 Interpretation**

In this contract, unless the context otherwise requires:

- (a) the singular includes the plural and vice versa;
- (b) any one gender includes the other;
- (c) all headings are for convenience of reference only and shall not be used in the construction of this contract;
- (d) reference to an item of primary or secondary legislation is to that item as amended or replaced from time to time;
- (e) reference to a contract, instrument or other document is to that contract, instrument or other document as amended, novated, supplemented or replaced from time to time;
- (f) reference to a party is to a party to this contract, its successors and permitted assigns;
- (g) reference to a recital, Clause or Schedule is to a recital, clause or schedule of or to this contract; reference in a schedule to a Part of or an Appendix to a schedule is to a part of or an appendix to the schedule in which the reference appears; reference in a Part of a Schedule to a paragraph is to a paragraph of that part; reference to a Part of an

appendix is to a part of the appendix in which the reference appears; and reference in a schedule to a Table is a reference to the table included in or annexed to that schedule;

- (h) where a word or expression is defined, cognate words and expressions shall be construed accordingly;
- (i) references to the word “person” or “persons” or to words importing persons include individuals, firms, corporations, government agencies, committees, departments, authorities and other bodies incorporated or unincorporated, whether having separate legal personality or not;
- (j) “otherwise” and words following “other” shall not be limited by any foregoing words where a wider construction is possible;
- (k) the words “including” and “in particular” shall be construed as being by way of illustration or emphasis and shall not limit or prejudice the generality of any foregoing words;
- (l) words and expressions defined in the Railways Act 1993, the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations 2006 and Network Rail’s network licence shall, unless otherwise defined in this contract, have the same meanings in this contract;
- (m) any reference to the term “possession”, either by itself or as part of any composite definition, shall be construed as a reference to a Restriction of Use as defined in Schedule 4;
- (n) words and expressions defined in the Network Code shall have the same meanings in this contract; and
- (o) if there is any conflict of interpretation between this contract and the Network Code, the Network Code shall prevail.

### **1.3 Indemnities**

Indemnities provided for in this contract are continuing indemnities in respect of the Relevant Losses to which they apply, and hold the indemnified party harmless on an after tax basis.

## **2 NETWORK CODE**

### **2.1 Incorporation**

The Network Code is incorporated in and forms part of this contract.

### **2.2 Modifications to the Network Code**

If the Network Code is modified at any time, Schedule 10 shall have effect.

### **2.3 Compliance by other operators**

Except where ORR has directed otherwise in the exercise of its powers under the Act or the Network Code, and except in relation to London Underground

Limited and Heathrow Express Operating Company Limited to the extent that such persons are not party to the Network Code, Network Rail shall ensure that all operators of trains having permission to use any track comprised in the Network agree to comply with the Network Code.

### **3 CONDITIONS PRECEDENT AND DURATION**

#### **3.1 Effective date**

The provisions of this contract, other than Clause 5, take effect from the later of the signature of this contract and 1 August 2014.

#### **3.2 Conditions precedent to Clause 5**

Clause 5 shall take effect when the following conditions precedent have been satisfied in full:

- (a) to the extent required by the Act and/or the Railways (Licensing of Railway Undertakings) Regulations 2005, the Train Operator is authorised to be the operator of trains for the provision of the Services by:
  - (i) a licence granted under section 8 of the Act; and/or
  - (ii) a European licence and corresponding SNRP;
- (b) Network Rail is authorised by a licence granted under section 8 of the Act to be the operator of that part of the Network comprising the Routes or is exempt from the requirement to be so authorised under section 7 of the Act;
- (c) each of the Collateral Agreements is executed and delivered by all the parties to each such agreement and is unconditional in all respects (save only for the fulfilment of any condition relating to this contract becoming unconditional);
- (d) each of the parties has, as necessary, a valid safety certificate or safety authorisation as required by the Railways and Other Guided Transport Systems (Safety) Regulations 2006 and has established and is maintaining a safety management system which meets the requirements of those Regulations; and
- (e) the provisions of this contract, other than Clause 5, have taken effect in accordance with Clause 3.1.

#### **3.3 Obligations to satisfy conditions precedent to Clause 5**

Each party shall use all reasonable endeavours to secure that the following conditions precedent are satisfied as soon as practicable, and in any event not later than the Longstop Date:

- (a) in the case of Network Rail, the conditions precedent contained in Clause 3.2(b) and, insofar as within its control, Clauses 3.2(c) and 3.2(d); and

- (b) in the case of the Train Operator, the conditions precedent contained in Clause 3.2(a) and, insofar as within its control, Clauses 3.2(c) and 3.2(d).

### **3.4 Consequences of non-fulfilment of conditions precedent to Clause 5**

If the conditions precedent set out in Clause 3.2 have not been satisfied in full on or before the Longstop Date:

- (a) this contract shall lapse save for the obligations of confidence contained in Clause 14 which shall continue in force; and
- (b) neither party shall have any liability to the other except in respect of any breach of its obligations under this contract.

### **3.5 Expiry**

This contract shall continue in force until the earliest of:

- (a) lapse under Clause 3.4;
- (b) termination under Schedule 6;
- (c) 0159 hours on the Expiry Date;
- (d) 0159 hours on the Principal Change Date in 2019, if the Train Operator fails by 31 December 2014 to enter into a new ten-year lease commencing in 2016 for its existing fleet of Class 180s and the additional Class 180s which it is planning to acquire to replace its existing fleet of High Speed Trains. The Train Operator shall no later than 31 January 2015 provide ORR with evidence reasonably satisfactory to ORR that such a lease has been entered into; and
- (e) 0159 on the Principal Change Date in 2023, if the Train Operator fails to obtain written notice from ORR in accordance with Clause 3.7.2 by 31 December 2018 that it has met the Investment Conditions.

### **3.6 Suspension and termination**

Schedule 6 shall have effect.

### **3.7 The Investment Conditions**

3.7.1 The Train Operator shall (in sufficient time to enable ORR to comply with Clause 3.7.2 below) provide ORR with evidence reasonably satisfactory to ORR of its compliance with the following conditions:

- (a) investment (subject to Network Rail agreement) of a minimum of £2.6m in aggregate on station facilities including but not limited to car parking, passenger information systems, CCTV and provision of staff facilities at one or several stations served by the Train Operator; and

(b) completion of the programme of works substantially in accordance with the specification as set out in Schedule 11 of this contract (together, the “Investment Conditions”);

provided that where the Train Operator’s failure to comply with the conditions in paragraph (a) above is attributable to the Train Operator’s failure to obtain planning permission or landowner consents, having made reasonable endeavours to obtain these, condition 3.7.1 (a) shall no longer apply.

3.7.2 ORR shall (on or before 31 December 2018) provide the Train Operator with written notice of its decision as to whether the Train Operator has met the Investment Conditions set out in Clause 3.7.1 above. ORR’s decision shall be final.

## **4 STANDARD OF PERFORMANCE**

### **4.1 General standard**

Without prejudice to all other obligations of the parties under this contract, each party shall, in its dealings with the other for the purpose of, and in the course of performance of its obligations under, this contract, act with due efficiency and economy and in a timely manner with that degree of skill, diligence, prudence and foresight which should be exercised by a skilled and experienced:

- (a) network owner and operator (in the case of Network Rail); and
- (b) train operator (in the case of the Train Operator).

### **4.2 Good faith**

The parties to this contract shall, in exercising their respective rights and complying with their respective obligations under this contract (including when conducting any discussions or negotiations arising out of the application of any provisions of this contract or exercising any discretion under them), at all times act in good faith.

## **5 PERMISSION TO USE**

### **5.1 Permission to use the Routes**

Network Rail grants the Train Operator permission to use the Routes.

### **5.2 Meaning**

References in this contract to permission to use the Routes shall, except where the context otherwise requires, be construed to mean permission:



- (a) to use the track comprised in the Routes for the provision of the Services using the Specified Equipment;
- (b) to use the track comprised in the Network in order to implement any plan established under Part H of the Network Code;
- (c) to make Ancillary Movements;
- (d) to Stable, which shall be treated, for the purposes of Part D of the Network Code, as the use of a Train Slot;
- (e) for the Train Operator and its associates to enter upon that part of the Network comprising the Routes, with or without vehicles; and
- (f) for the Train Operator and its associates to bring things onto that part of the Network comprising the Routes and keep them there,

and such permission is subject, in each case and in all respects to:

- (i) the Network Code;
- (ii) the Applicable Engineering Access Statement; and
- (iii) the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules.

### **5.3 Permission under Clauses 5.2(e) and 5.2(f)**

In relation to the permissions specified in Clauses 5.2(e) and 5.2(f):

- (a) the Train Operator shall, and shall procure that its associates shall, wherever reasonably practicable, first obtain the consent of Network Rail, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed;
- (b) the Train Operator shall remove any vehicle or other thing so brought onto any part of the Network when reasonably directed to do so by Network Rail; and
- (c) whilst exercising any rights conferred by Clauses 5.2(e) and 5.2(f), the Train Operator shall, and shall procure that its associates shall, comply with such reasonable restrictions or instructions as Network Rail shall specify.

### **5.4 Changes to Applicable Engineering Access Statement and Applicable Timetable Planning Rules**

Changes to the Applicable Engineering Access Statement and the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules are subject to regulatory protection (including appeals) in accordance with Part D of the Network Code.

### **5.5 Engineering Access Statement, Timetable Planning Rules and Restrictions of Use**

Schedule 4 shall have effect.

### **5.6 The Services and the Specified Equipment**

Schedules 5 and 12 shall have effect.

## **5.7 Performance**

Schedule 8 shall have effect.

## **5.8 Stabling**

Without prejudice to Network Rail's obligations, if any, under Schedule 5 to provide Stabling, Network Rail shall use all reasonable endeavours to provide such Stabling facilities as are necessary or expedient for or in connection with the provision of the Services in accordance with the Working Timetable.

# **6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE OF TRAINS AND NETWORK**

## **6.1 General**

Without prejudice to the other provisions of this contract:

- (a) the Train Operator shall maintain and operate the Specified Equipment used on the Network in accordance with Clause 4.1 with a view to permitting the provision of the Services on the Routes in accordance with the Working Timetable and the making of Ancillary Movements; and
- (b) Network Rail shall maintain and operate the Network in accordance with Clause 4.1 with a view to permitting the provision of the Services on the Routes using the Specified Equipment in accordance with the Working Timetable and the making of Ancillary Movements.

## **6.2 Trespass, vandalism and animals**

Without prejudice to the other provisions of this contract, each of the parties shall use all reasonable endeavours (including participating in such consultation and joint action as is reasonable in all the circumstances) to reduce:

- (a) trespass;
- (b) vandalism; and
- (c) intrusions on to the Network by animals,

in each case as may affect either the provision of the Services or the Routes.

## **6.3 Safety**

In relation to Safety Obligations:

- (a) the Train Operator shall comply with any reasonable request by Network Rail in relation to any aspect of the Train Operator's operations which affects or is likely to affect the performance of Network Rail's Safety Obligations; and
- (b) Network Rail shall comply with any reasonable request by the Train Operator in relation to any aspect of Network Rail's operations which affects or is likely to affect the performance of the Train Operator's Safety Obligations.

## **6.4 Use of Railway Code Systems**

### **6.4.1 General**

The parties shall:

- (a) use the Railway Code Systems in their dealings with each other in connection with matters provided for in this contract; and
- (b) comply with the Systems Code.

### **6.4.2 Provision of Train Consist Data**

Without prejudice to Clause 6.4.1, the Train Operator shall:

- (a) provide to Network Rail such Train Consist Data as shall be necessary to enable Network Rail to calculate the amount of Track Charges; and
- (b) procure that such data is true and accurate in all respects.

## **7 TRACK CHARGES AND OTHER PAYMENTS**

Schedule 7 shall have effect.

## **8 LIABILITY**

### **8.1 Performance Orders in relation to breach**

In relation to any breach of this contract:

- (a) the Innocent Party shall be entitled to apply under Clause 13 for a Performance Order against the party in breach; and
- (b) if a Performance Order is made, the party against whom it has been made shall comply with it.

### **8.2 Compensation in relation to breach**

In relation to any breach of this contract, the party in breach shall indemnify the Innocent Party against all Relevant Losses.

## **9 NOT USED**

## **10 LIABILITY - OTHER MATTERS**

### **10.1 Train Operator indemnity**

The Train Operator shall indemnify Network Rail against all Relevant Losses resulting from:

- (a) a failure by the Train Operator to comply with its Safety Obligations;
- (b) any Environmental Damage arising directly from the acts or omissions of the Train Operator or the proper taking by Network Rail under Condition

E2 of the Network Code of any steps to prevent, mitigate or remedy an Environmental Condition which exists as a direct result of the acts or omissions of the Train Operator; and

- (c) any damage to the Network arising directly from the Train Operator's negligence.

## **10.2 Network Rail indemnity**

Network Rail shall indemnify the Train Operator against all Relevant Losses resulting from:

- (a) a failure by Network Rail to comply with its Safety Obligations;
- (b) any Environmental Damage to the Network arising directly from any acts or omissions of the British Railways Board prior to 1 April 1994 and any Environmental Damage arising directly from the acts or omissions of Network Rail; and
- (c) any damage to the Specified Equipment or other vehicles or things brought onto the Network in accordance with the permission to use granted by this contract arising directly from Network Rail's negligence.

## **11 RESTRICTIONS ON CLAIMS**

### **11.1 Notification and mitigation**

A party wishing to claim under any indemnity provided for in this contract:

- (a) shall notify the other party of the relevant circumstances giving rise to that claim as soon as reasonably practicable after first becoming aware of those circumstances (and in any event within 365 days of first becoming so aware); and
- (b) subject to Clause 11.1(c), shall take all reasonable steps to prevent, mitigate and restrict the circumstances giving rise to that claim and any Relevant Losses connected with that claim; but
- (c) shall not be required to exercise any specific remedy available to it under this contract.

### **11.2 Restrictions on claims by Network Rail**

Any claim by Network Rail against the Train Operator for indemnity for Relevant Losses:

- (a) shall exclude payments to any person under or in accordance with the provisions of any Access Agreement other than any such payments which are for obligations to compensate for damage to property, and so that any claim for indemnity under this contract for such payments for damage to property, in relation to any incident, shall be limited to:

- (i) the maximum amount for which the Train Operator would be liable for such damage in accordance with the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement; less
  - (ii) any other compensation which the Train Operator has an obligation to pay for such damage;
- (b) shall exclude loss of revenue in respect of permission to use any part of the Network under or in accordance with any Access Agreement with any person; and
- (c) shall:
  - (i) include Relevant Losses only to the extent that these constitute amounts which Network Rail would not have incurred as network owner and operator but for the relevant breach; and
  - (ii) give credit for any savings to Network Rail which result or are likely to result from the incurring of such amounts.

### **11.3 Restrictions on claims by Train Operator**

Any claim by the Train Operator against Network Rail for indemnity for Relevant Losses:

- (a) shall exclude any Relevant Losses to the extent that they result from delays to or cancellations of trains (other than delays or cancellations in circumstances where the SPP Threshold has been exceeded as provided for in paragraph 18 of Schedule 8); and
- (b) shall:
  - (i) include Relevant Losses only to the extent that these constitute amounts which the Train Operator would not have incurred as train operator but for the relevant breach; and
  - (ii) give credit for any savings to the Train Operator which result or are likely to result from the incurring of such amounts.

### **11.4 Restriction on claims by both parties**

Any claim for indemnity for Relevant Losses shall exclude Relevant Losses which:

- (a) do not arise naturally from the breach; and
- (b) were not, or may not reasonably be supposed to have been, within the contemplation of the parties:
  - (i) at the time of the making of this contract; or
  - (ii) where the breach relates to a modification or amendment to this contract, at the time of the making of such modification or amendment,
 as the probable result of the breach.

## **11.5 Limitation on liability**

Schedule 9 shall have effect so as to limit the liability of the parties to one another under the indemnities in Clauses 8.2 and 10, but:

- (a) does not limit any liability arising under Schedules 4, 5, 7 or 8 (other than under paragraph 18 of Schedule 8);
- (b) in relation to a failure to perform an obligation under the Network Code, only to the extent (including as to time and conditions) that the Network Code so provides; and
- (c) subject to Clause 18.3.3.

## **11.6 Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement**

### ***11.6.1 General***

Clauses 16 and 17 of the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement provide that claims between parties to it are limited to specified amounts unless the parties expressly contract otherwise.

### ***11.6.2 Restriction of application***

Except as otherwise expressly provided in this contract, Clauses 16 and 17 of the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement shall not apply as between the parties to this contract if and to the extent that the giving of any right or remedy as provided for under this contract would be prevented or restricted by Clauses 16 and 17 of the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement.

### ***11.6.3 Liability for small claims***

Nothing in this contract shall affect the application as between the parties of the provisions of the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement which relate to liability for small claims equal to or below the Threshold (as defined in that agreement).

## **12 GOVERNING LAW**

This contract and any non-contractual obligations connected with it shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of England and Wales.

## **13 DISPUTE RESOLUTION**

### **13.1 ADRR**

A Relevant Dispute shall be referred for resolution in accordance with the Access Dispute Resolution Rules in force at the time of the reference (the "ADRR"), as modified by this Clause 13, unless:

- (a) any Part of the Network Code provides for an alternative dispute resolution procedure for the Relevant Dispute, in which case such alternative procedure shall apply;
- (b) any Part of Schedules 4, 5, 7 or 8 provides for an alternative dispute resolution procedure for the Relevant Dispute, in which case such alternative procedure shall apply; or
- (c) Clause 13.2 applies.

## **13.2 Unpaid sums**

If either party fails to pay:

- (a) any invoice issued to it under this contract in respect of Track Charges; or
- (b) any other sum which has fallen due in accordance with any provision of this contract,

then:

- (i) the amount invoiced or sum due, as referred to in Clause 13.2(a) or (b), shall immediately constitute a debt due and owing from the party who has failed to pay the invoice or sum due to the other party (and to any assignee of a party's right to payment in respect of any invoice or other sum due);
- (ii) such debt shall be recoverable by any means available under the laws of England and Wales; and
- (iii) the dispute resolution procedures in Clauses 13.1 and 13.3 to 13.5 shall not apply to proceedings commenced under this Clause 13.2.

## **13.3 Performance Orders**

### ***13.3.1 Power to order provisional relief***

For the purposes of section 39 of the Arbitration Act 1996, should any Relevant Dispute be allocated in accordance with the ADRR to arbitration under Chapter F of the ADRR, the arbitrator shall have power to order on a provisional basis any relief which he would have power to grant in a final award including Performance Orders.

### ***13.3.2 Performance Orders***

A Performance Order:

- (a) is an order made under Clause 13.3.3(b), relating to a Relevant Dispute, whether by way of interim or final relief; and
- (b) may be applied for by Network Rail or the Train Operator in the circumstances set out in Clause 8.1, subject to the qualifications in Clause 17.8,

and an application for a Performance Order shall be without prejudice to any other remedy available to the claimant under this contract (whether final or interim and whether by way of appeal under the Network Code or otherwise).

#### **13.3.3 Duties of arbitrator in relation to Performance Orders**

Without prejudice to any additional remedies that may be ordered by the arbitrator under Clause 13.4, where a dispute is allocated in accordance with the ADRR to arbitration and a party has applied for a Performance Order, the parties shall agree in a Procedure Agreement, as defined in the ADRR, that:

- (a) the arbitrator shall decide as soon as possible whether the application is well founded or not; and
- (b) if the arbitrator decides that the application is well founded, he shall be required to make an interim or final declaration to that effect and, in that event, the arbitrator may also make any interim or final order directing any party to do or to refrain from doing anything arising from such declaration which he considers just and reasonable in all the circumstances.

#### **13.4 Remedies**

The powers exercisable by the arbitrator as regards remedies shall include:

- (a) the powers specified in sections 48(3) to (5) of the Arbitration Act 1996;
- (b) the powers specified in the ADRR;
- (c) the power to make Performance Orders; and
- (d) the power to order within the same reference to arbitration any relief specified in Clause 13.4 (a), (b) and (c) consequent upon, or for the breach of, any interim or final Performance Order previously made.

#### **13.5 Exclusion of applications on preliminary points of law**

Any recourse to any Court for the determination of a preliminary point of law arising in the course of the arbitration proceedings is excluded.

### **14 CONFIDENTIALITY**

#### **14.1 Confidential Information**

##### **14.1.1 General obligation**

Except as permitted by Clause 14.2, all Confidential Information shall be held confidential during and after the continuance of this contract and shall not be divulged in any way to any third party without the prior written approval of the other party.



#### **14.1.2 Network Rail - Affiliates**

Except as permitted by Clause 14.2, Network Rail shall procure that its Affiliates and its and their respective officers, employees and agents shall keep confidential and not disclose to any person any Confidential Information.

#### **14.1.3 Train Operator - Affiliates**

Except as permitted by Clause 14.2, the Train Operator shall procure that its Affiliates and its and their respective officers, employees and agents shall keep confidential and not disclose to any person any Confidential Information.

### **14.2 Entitlement to divulge**

Either party, and its Affiliates, and its and their respective officers, employees and agents, shall be entitled in good faith to divulge any Confidential Information without the approval of the other party in the following circumstances:

- (a) to ORR;
- (b) Not used;
- (c) to any Affiliate of either party;
- (d) to any officer or employee of the party in question or any person engaged in the provision of goods or services to or for him if disclosure is necessary or reasonably required to enable the party in question to perform its obligations under this contract, upon obtaining an undertaking of strict confidentiality from such officer, employee or person;
- (e) to any professional advisers or consultants of such party engaged by or on behalf of such party and acting in that capacity, upon obtaining an undertaking of strict confidentiality from such advisers or consultants;
- (f) to any insurer or insurance broker from whom such party is seeking insurance or in connection with the making of any claim under any policy of insurance upon obtaining an undertaking of strict confidentiality from the insurer or insurance broker;
- (g) to any lender, security trustee, bank or other institution from whom such party is seeking or obtaining finance or credit support for such finance, or any advisers to any such entity, or any rating agency from whom such party is seeking a rating in connection with such finance or credit support, upon obtaining an undertaking of strict confidentiality from the entity, advisers or rating agency in question;
- (h) to the extent required by the Act, the Railways (Licensing of Railway Undertakings) Regulations 2005, any other applicable law, the rules of any recognised stock exchange or regulatory body or any written request of any taxation authority;

- (i) to the extent that it has become available to the public other than as a result of a breach of confidence; and
- (j) under the order of any court or tribunal of competent jurisdiction (including the Allocation Chair or any relevant ADR Forum, each as defined in the ADR).

### **14.3 Return of Confidential Information**

Each of Network Rail and the Train Operator shall promptly return to the other party any Confidential Information requested by the other party if such request:

- (a) is made on or within two months after the Expiry Date or, if this contract lapses or is terminated earlier, is made within two months after the date on which this contract lapses or is terminated;
- (b) is reasonable; and
- (c) contains a sufficient description of the relevant Confidential Information to enable such information to be readily identified and located.

### **14.4 Retention or destruction of Confidential Information**

If Network Rail or the Train Operator, as the case may be, has not received a request to return any Confidential Information to the other party under and within the time limits specified in Clause 14.3, it may destroy or retain such Confidential Information.

### **14.5 Ownership of Confidential Information**

All Confidential Information shall be and shall remain the property of the party which supplied it to the other party.

### **14.6 Network Code and Schedule 7**

Nothing in this Clause 14 restricts the right of Network Rail to disclose information to which this Clause 14 applies to the extent that it is permitted or required so to do under the Network Code or Schedule 7.

## **15 ASSIGNMENT AND NOVATION**

### **15.1 Assignment**

Neither party may assign, transfer, novate (including a novation under Clause 15.2) or create any encumbrance or other security interest over the whole or any part of its rights and obligations under this contract except to the extent approved by ORR following consultation with the other party, and subject to the conditions (if any) of ORR's approval.

## **15.2 Novation**

Network Rail (and any assignee of all or part of Network Rail's rights under this contract) shall:

- (a) agree to the novation of the rights and obligations of the Train Operator under this contract in favour of another person in any circumstances; and
- (b) Not used.

## **15.3 Novation terms**

Any novation under Clause 15.2 shall be on terms that:

- (a) the Train Operator shall not be released from:
  - (i) any accrued but unperformed obligation;
  - (ii) the consequences of any breach of this contract which is the subject of any proceedings (arbitral or otherwise) for the resolution of a dispute between the parties; or
  - (iii) any liability in respect of anything done under this contract before, or as at the date of, any such novation (except to the extent that such other person agrees to assume and be responsible for it); and
- (b) such other person shall not be required by Network Rail, as a term of or a condition to the novation, to agree to assume and be responsible for any unperformed obligation, liability or consequence of a breach of the kind referred to in Clause 15.3(a).

## **16 PAYMENTS, INTEREST AND VAT**

### **16.1 Payment**

#### *16.1.1 No deduction*

All sums due or payable by either party under this contract shall be paid free and clear of any deduction, withholding or set off except only as may be required by law or as expressly provided in any Schedule to this contract or in the Network Code.

#### *16.1.2 Delivery of invoices*

All invoices issued under Schedule 7, or statements of amounts payable under Schedules 4, 5 or 8 or the Network Code, shall be delivered by hand at, or sent by prepaid first class post or by facsimile transmission (with confirmation copy by prepaid first class post) to, the address for service for the recipient specified in Schedule 1 and shall be deemed to have been received by the addressee in accordance with Clause 18.4.3.

### ***16.1.3 Content of invoices and other statements of amounts payable***

Each invoice and statement of amounts payable shall contain such detail as to the constituent elements of the amounts stated to be payable as shall be necessary or expedient so as to enable the person to whom it is given to understand and check it.

### ***16.1.4 Method of payment***

All payments shall be made by direct debit mandate or standing order mandate, CHAPS transfer, BACS transfer or other electronic or telegraphic transfer to a London clearing bank or such other financial institution as may be approved by the party entitled to the payment, such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed.

## **16.2 Interest**

Without prejudice to any other rights or remedies which one party may have in respect of the failure of the other party to pay any amount on the due date, amounts payable under this contract and not paid by the due date shall carry interest (to accrue daily and to be compounded monthly) at the Default Interest Rate from the due date until the date of actual payment (as well after judgment as before), except to the extent that late payment arises from any failure by the invoicing party to comply with Clause 16.1.2 or Clause 16.1.3.

## **16.3 VAT**

### ***16.3.1 Payment of VAT***

Where any taxable supply for VAT purposes is made under or in connection with this contract by one party to the other the payer shall, in addition to any payment required for that supply, pay such VAT as is chargeable in respect of it.

### ***16.3.2 Reimbursement of VAT***

Where under this contract one party is to reimburse or indemnify the other in respect of any payment made or cost incurred by the other, the first party shall also reimburse any VAT paid by the other which forms part of its payment made or cost incurred to the extent such VAT is not available for credit for the other party (or for any person with whom the indemnified party is treated as a member of a group for VAT purposes) under sections 25 and 26 of the Value Added Tax Act 1994.

### ***16.3.3 VAT credit note to be issued on repayment***

Where under this contract any rebate or repayment of any amount is payable by one party to the other, and the first party is entitled as a matter of law or of HM Revenue and Customs practice to issue a valid VAT credit note, such rebate or repayment shall be paid together with an amount representing the

VAT paid on that part of the consideration in respect of which the rebate or repayment is made, and the first party shall issue an appropriate VAT credit note to the other party.

## **17 FORCE MAJEURE EVENTS**

### **17.1 Meaning of Force Majeure Event**

In this Clause 17:

**“Affected Party”** means, in relation to a Force Majeure Event, the party claiming relief under this Clause 17 by virtue of that Force Majeure Event, and **“Non-affected Party”** shall be construed accordingly;

**“Force Majeure Event”** means any of the following events (and any circumstance arising as a direct consequence of any of the following events):

- (a) an act of the public enemy or terrorists or war (declared or undeclared), threat of war, revolution, riot, insurrection, civil commotion, demonstration or sabotage;
- (b) acts of vandalism or accidental damage or destruction of machinery, equipment, track or other infrastructure;
- (c) natural disasters or phenomena, including extreme weather or environmental conditions (such as lightning, earthquake, hurricane, storm, fire, flood, drought or accumulation of snow or ice);
- (d) nuclear, chemical or biological contamination;
- (e) pressure waves caused by devices travelling at supersonic speeds;
- (f) discovery of fossils, antiquities or unexploded bombs; and
- (g) strike or other industrial action which is a single circumstance and which also is a strike or industrial action in sectors of the economy other than the railway industry;

**“Force Majeure Notice”** means a notice to be given by the Affected Party to the other party stating that a Force Majeure Event has occurred;

**“Force Majeure Report”** means a report to be given by the Affected Party to the other party following the giving of a Force Majeure Notice;

**“Relevant Force Majeure Event”** means a Force Majeure Event in relation to which an Affected Party is claiming relief under this Clause 17; and

**“Relevant Obligation”** means an obligation under this contract in respect of which a Force Majeure Event has occurred and the Affected Party has claimed relief under this Clause 17.

### **17.2 Nature and extent of relief for Force Majeure**

Force Majeure relief under this Clause 17:

- (a) extinguishes the obligation of the Affected Party to indemnify the other party under Clause 8.2 in respect of Relevant Losses sustained as a result of the failure of the Affected Party to perform a Relevant Obligation; but
- (b) is not available in respect of:
  - (i) any obligation to pay money under Schedules 4, 5, 7 and 8; or
  - (ii) any other obligation to do or refrain from doing any other thing provided for in this contract; and
- (c) is only available in relation to a failure to perform an obligation under the Network Code to the extent (including as to time and conditions) that the Network Code so provides.

### **17.3 Entitlement to Force Majeure relief**

An Affected Party is entitled to Force Majeure relief if and to the extent that:

- (a) performance of the Relevant Obligation has been prevented or materially impeded by reason of a Force Majeure Event;
- (b) it has taken all reasonable steps, taking account of all relevant circumstances (including as to whether the event in question could reasonably have been anticipated):
  - (i) to avoid the occurrence of the Force Majeure Event; and
  - (ii) to minimise, and where practicable avoid, the effects of the Force Majeure Event on its ability to perform the Relevant Obligation; and
- (c) except in the case of Clause 17.1(f), none of the Affected Party, its officers, employees or agents caused the Force Majeure Event.

### **17.4 Procedure for claiming relief**

Without prejudice to Clause 17.3, an Affected Party is only entitled to claim Force Majeure relief under this Clause 17 if it complies with the obligations to give Force Majeure Notices, Force Majeure Reports and provide other information under Clause 17.5 and to perform its obligations under Clause 17.6.

### **17.5 Force Majeure Notices and Reports**

#### ***17.5.1 Force Majeure Notice***

In relation to any Relevant Force Majeure Event:

- (a) as soon as reasonably practicable after the Affected Party becomes aware, or ought reasonably to have become aware, that such Force Majeure Event qualifies for relief under this Clause 17 (and, in any event, within 72 hours of becoming aware of such circumstances), the Affected Party shall give a Force Majeure Notice; and

- (b) the Force Majeure Notice shall include detailed particulars (to the extent available) of the Relevant Force Majeure Event and its consequences, its effects on the Affected Party, the Relevant Obligations, the likely duration of such consequences and effects and the remedial measures proposed by the Affected Party to avoid or remove the Relevant Force Majeure Event or to mitigate its consequences and effects.

#### **17.5.2 Force Majeure Report**

Following the giving of a Force Majeure Notice:

- (a) the Affected Party shall give a Force Majeure Report as soon as practicable, and in any event within seven days of service of the Force Majeure Notice; and
- (b) the Force Majeure Report shall constitute a full report on the Relevant Force Majeure Event, amplifying the information provided in the Force Majeure Notice and containing such information as may reasonably be required by the Non-affected Party, including the effect which the Relevant Force Majeure Event is estimated to have on the Affected Party's performance of the Relevant Obligations.

#### **17.5.3 Other information**

The Affected Party shall promptly give the Non-affected Party all other information concerning the Relevant Force Majeure Event and the steps which could reasonably be taken, and which the Affected Party proposes to take, to avoid or remove the Relevant Force Majeure Event or to mitigate its consequences and effects as may reasonably be requested by the Non-affected Party from time to time.

### **17.6 Mitigation**

The Affected Party shall, promptly upon becoming aware of the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event in respect of which it intends to claim relief, use all reasonable endeavours to:

- (a) minimise the effects of such Force Majeure Event on the performance of the Relevant Obligations; and
- (b) minimise the duration of such Force Majeure Event,

and shall keep the Non-affected Party fully informed of the actions which it has taken or proposes to take under this Clause 17.6.

### **17.7 Duration of relief for force majeure**

The right of an Affected Party to relief under Clause 17.2 shall cease on the earlier of:

- (a) the date on which its performance of the Relevant Obligations is no longer prevented or materially impeded by the Relevant Force Majeure Event; and

- (b) the date on which such performance would no longer have been prevented or materially impeded if the Affected Party had complied with its obligations under Clause 17.6.

## **17.8 Availability of Performance Order**

If and to the extent that a breach of this contract has been caused by a Relevant Force Majeure Event, the Non-affected Party shall not be entitled to a Performance Order except to secure performance by the Affected Party of its obligations under this Clause 17.

## **18 MISCELLANEOUS**

### **18.1 Non waiver**

#### *18.1.1 No waiver*

No waiver by either party of any failure by the other to perform any obligation under this contract shall operate or be construed as a waiver of any other or further default, whether of a like or different character.

#### *18.1.2 Failure or delay in exercising a right or remedy*

The failure to exercise or delay in exercising a right or remedy under this contract shall not constitute a waiver of the right or remedy or a waiver of any other rights or remedies, and no single or partial exercise of any right or remedy under this contract shall prevent any further exercise of the right or remedy or the exercise of any other right or remedy.

### **18.2 Variations**

#### *18.2.1 Amendments to be in writing and to be approved*

No amendment of any provision of this contract shall be effective unless:

- (a) such amendment is in writing and signed by, or on behalf of, the parties; and
- (b) if it is an amendment which requires ORR's approval under section 22 of the Act, the amendment has been approved by ORR.

#### *18.2.2 Exceptions*

Clause 18.2.1(b) does not apply to amendments of the following kinds:

- (a) an amendment made by virtue of a general approval issued by ORR under section 22 of the Act; and
- (b) a modification made by virtue of Clause 18.4.2.



### ***18.2.3 No Office of Rail Regulation approval needed***

Modifications of the following kinds do not require ORR's approval under section 22 of the Act and so are not subject to Clause 18.2.1(b):

- (a) modifications effected by virtue of any of the Schedules to this contract; and
  - (b) modifications effected by virtue of the Network Code,
- unless the relevant provision expressly states that it requires the approval of ORR.

### ***18.2.4 Conformed copy of contract***

Network Rail shall produce and send to the Train Operator and to ORR a conformed copy of this contract within 28 days of the making of any amendment or modification to it (including any modification made by virtue of Schedule 10).

## **18.3 Entire contract and exclusive remedies**

### ***18.3.1 Entire contract***

Subject to Clause 18.3.3:

- (a) this contract contains the entire agreement between the parties in relation to the subject matter of this contract;
- (b) each party acknowledges that it has not been induced to enter into this contract in reliance upon, nor has it been given, any warranty, representation, statement, agreement or undertaking of any nature whatsoever other than as expressly set out in this contract and, to the extent that this is not the case, the relevant party unconditionally and irrevocably waives any claims, rights or remedies which it might otherwise have had in relation to any such matter; and
- (c) neither party shall have any right to rescind or terminate this contract either for breach of contract or for misrepresentation or otherwise, except as expressly provided for in this contract.

### ***18.3.2 Exclusive remedies***

Subject to Clause 18.3.3 and except as expressly provided in this contract:

- (a) neither party shall have any liability (including liability arising as a result of any negligence, breach of contract or breach of statutory obligation) to the other in connection with the subject matter of this contract; and
- (b) the remedies provided for in this contract shall be the sole remedies available to the parties in respect of any matters for which such remedies are available.

### ***18.3.3 Fraud, death and personal injury***

Without prejudice to the generality of this Clause 18.3, nothing in this contract shall exclude, restrict or limit, or purport to exclude, restrict or limit:

- (a) any liability which either party would otherwise have to the other party, or any right which either party may have to rescind this contract, in respect of any statement made fraudulently by the other party before the execution of this contract;
- (b) any right which either party may have in respect of fraudulent concealment by the other party;
- (c) any right which either party may have in respect of a statement of the kind referred to in section 146 of the Act, whether or not proceedings have been instituted in that respect; or
- (d) any liability which either party may have towards the other party for death or personal injury resulting from its negligence or the negligence of any of its officers, employees or agents.

## **18.4 Notices**

### ***18.4.1 Giving of notices***

Any notice to be given under this contract:

- (a) shall be in writing; and
- (b) shall be duly given if signed by or on behalf of a person duly authorised to do so by the party giving the notice and delivered by hand at, or by sending it by prepaid first class post, recorded delivery or by facsimile transmission (with confirmation copy by prepaid first class post) to, the relevant address or facsimile number set out in Schedule 1.

For the purposes of this Clause 18.4 and Clause 16.1.2, delivery by hand shall include delivery by a reputable firm of couriers.

### ***18.4.2 Right to modify registered company and communication details***

A party shall be entitled to modify in any respect:

- (a) the registered name and address details which relate to it and are set out on page one of this contract (provided that this modification shall not amount to or purport to be an assignment, transfer or novation of this contract); and
- (b) the communication particulars which relate to it and which are set out in Schedule 1,

by giving notice of such modification:

- (i) to the other party as soon as reasonably practicable; and
- (ii) to ORR within 14 days of such modification.

#### **18.4.3 Deemed receipt**

A notice shall be deemed to have been given and received:

- (a) if sent by hand or recorded delivery, at the time of delivery;
- (b) if sent by prepaid first class post from and to any place within the United Kingdom, three Working Days after posting unless otherwise proven; and
- (c) if sent by facsimile (subject to confirmation of uninterrupted transmission by a transmission report) before 1700 hours on a Working Day, on the day of transmission and, in any other case, at 0900 hours on the next following Working Day.

#### **18.4.4 Copyees**

If Schedule 1 specifies any person to whom copies of notices shall also be sent:

- (a) the party giving a notice in the manner required by this Clause 18.4 shall send a copy of the notice to such person at the address for sending copies as specified in Schedule 1, or to such other person or address as may, from time to time, have been notified by the party to be notified to the notifying party under this Clause 18.4; and
- (b) such copy notice shall be sent immediately after the original notice.

### **18.5 Counterparts**

This contract may be executed in two counterparts which, taken together, shall constitute one and the same document. Either party may enter into this contract by signing either of such counterparts.

### **18.6 Survival**

Those provisions of this contract which by their nature or implication are required to survive expiry or termination of this contract (including the provisions of Clauses 8 (Liability), 10 (Liability - Other Matters), 11 (Restrictions on Claims); 12 (Governing Law), 13.2 (Unpaid Sums), 14 (Confidentiality), 16 (Payments, Interest and VAT), 17 (Force Majeure Events), paragraph 4 of Schedule 6 (Consequence of Termination) and Schedule 9 (Limitation on liability)), shall so survive and continue in full force and effect, together with any other provisions of this contract necessary to give effect to such provisions.

### **18.7 Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999**

#### **18.7.1 Application to third parties**

Save as provided in this Clause 18.7 or as expressly provided elsewhere in this contract, no person who is not a party to this contract shall have any right

under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 to enforce any term of this contract.

#### *18.7.2 Application to the Office of Rail Regulation*

ORR shall have the right under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 to enforce directly such rights as have been granted to it under this contract.

#### *18.7.3 Not Used*

### **19 TRANSITION**

#### **19.1 Corresponding Rights**

In relation to any Corresponding Right:

- (a) any Access Proposal or Rolled Over Access Proposal made under the Previous Access Agreement in relation to a Train Slot in respect of which there is a Corresponding Right shall:
  - (i) cease to have effect under the Previous Access Agreement as from the Transition Date; and
  - (ii) be deemed to have effect under this contract as from the Transition Date;
- (b) any Train Slot which is the subject of an Access Proposal or Rolled Over Access Proposal referred to in Clause 19.1(a) shall for all purposes be treated as if it had been established in and under this contract and not the Previous Access Agreement;
- (c) any consultations undertaken, notices served, matters referred to dispute resolution, agreements reached or determinations made which:
  - (i) are made in accordance with Parts D, F, G or H of the Network Code under the Previous Access Agreement in relation to the Engineering Access Statement or the Timetable Planning Rules, Major Projects, Vehicle Change, Network Change or train regulation; and
  - (ii) relate to a right under the Previous Access Agreement which is the subject of a Corresponding Right,shall:
  - (A) cease to have effect under the Previous Access Agreement as from the Transition Date; and
  - (B) be deemed to have effect under this contract as from the Transition Date; and
- (d) in applying Schedule 4, effect shall be given:

- (i) in relation to any Restriction of Use which was notified before the Transition Date, to any Previous Notification Factor;
- (ii) in relation to any Significant Restrictions of Use, to any bespoke compensation arrangements established under the Previous Access Agreement; and
- (iii) in relation to any Competent Authority Restrictions of Use, to any bespoke compensation arrangements established under the Previous Access Agreement.

## 19.2 Definitions

In this Clause 19:

**“Corresponding Right”** means any right of a party under this contract which:

- (a) relates to the permission of the Train Operator to use the Routes; and
- (b) corresponds to a right which:
  - (i) existed under the Previous Access Agreements; and
  - (ii) ceased to have effect under the Previous Access Agreements as from the Transition Date;

**“Previous Access Agreements”** means the track access agreements dated 12 February 2010 (West Riding services) and 18 January 2007 (North Eastern services) between Network Rail Infrastructure Limited and Grand Central Railway Company Limited;

**“Previous Notification Factor”** means the Notification Factor as established by reference to Column C, D or E of Annex A to Part 3 of Schedule 4 under the relevant Previous Access Agreements; and

**“Transition Date”** means the date on which this contract comes into effect for all purposes.

## 20 ERTMS COMPENSATION

Subject to the provisions contained therein, Schedule 13 shall have effect.

## **SCHEDULE 1: CONTACT PARTICULARS<sup>2ND</sup>**

1. Network Rail's address for service of notices is:

Network Rail Infrastructure Limited

1 Eversholt Street

London

NW1 2DN

Tel: 020 7904 4001

Email: [notices@networkrail.co.uk](mailto:notices@networkrail.co.uk)

All written notices to be marked:

"URGENT: ATTENTION THE COMPANY SECRETARY AND SOLICITOR"

and copied to:

The Route Managing Director

Network Rail (LNE & EM Route)

Floor 4B, George Stephenson House

Toft Green, York

YO1 6JT

Tel: 01904 383 145

2. The Train Operator's address for the service of notices is:

Grand Central Railway Company Limited

3<sup>rd</sup> Floor, Northern House,

9 Rougier Street,

York

YO1 6HZ

Tel: 01904 461370

Fax: 01904 466066

Email: [info@grandcentralrail.com](mailto:info@grandcentralrail.com)

All written notices to be marked:

"URGENT: ATTENTION MANAGING DIRECTOR"

## **SCHEDULE 2: THE ROUTES**

1. In order to provide the Services, the Train Operator has permission to use the routes specified in Column 1 of Table 2.1 and Table 2.2 of Schedule 5.
2. In order to provide Services when any part of the route is unavailable, the Train Operator has permission to use any reasonable route for diversionary purposes, subject to obtaining any necessary route clearance for the Specified Equipment over the route in question.
3. In order to make Ancillary Movements, the Train Operator has permission to use any reasonable route, subject to obtaining any necessary route clearance for the Specified Equipment over the route in question.
4. In order to Stable railway vehicles, the Train Operator has permission to use any reasonable location, subject to obtaining any necessary route clearance for the Specified Equipment for the location in question.
5. Use of all routes is subject to the Network Code.

### **SCHEDULE 3: COLLATERAL AGREEMENTS**

1. An access agreement between (1) the Train Operator and (2) Network Rail granting the Train Operator permission to use London King's Cross station.
2. An agreement under which the Train Operator agrees to become a party to the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement and, for the purpose of Schedule 6, the Claims Allocation and Handling Agreement.
3. Not used.
4. An accession agreement to the document entitled Emergency Access Code as approved or directed by ORR and, for the purpose of Schedule 6, the Emergency Access Code.



**SCHEDULE 4: ENGINEERING ACCESS STATEMENT, TIMETABLE PLANNING  
RULES AND RESTRICTIONS OF USE**

**PART 1: NOT USED**

**PART 2: NOT USED**

## PART 3: COMPENSATION FOR RESTRICTIONS OF USE

### 1. Definitions

#### 1.1 *Defined terms*

In this Part 3 and its Annexes, unless the context otherwise requires:

- “Applicable Timetable”** means, in respect of any day, that part of the Working Timetable in respect of that day which is required to be drawn up in accordance with Condition D2.1.1 of the Network Code as at 22:00 hours on the day prior to that day;
- “Bi-annual Timetable”** means either of the following:
- (a) the Corresponding Day Timetable for all days in the period from and including the Principal Change Date up to but excluding the immediately following Subsidiary Change Date; or
  - (b) the Corresponding Day Timetable for all days from and including the Subsidiary Change Date up to but excluding the immediately following Subsidiary Change Date or Principal Change Date, as the case may be;
- “Cancellation Minutes”** shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;
- “Cap”** shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;
- “Corresponding Day”** means, in respect of any day (the **“first day”**):
- (a) a day which is contained in the same Timetable Period as the first day and on which the Services scheduled in the New Working Timetable are the same as would have been scheduled on the first day but

for Restrictions of Use reflected in the New Working Timetable for the first day; or

- (b) if no day is found under paragraph (a) above, then a day which is contained in the equivalent Timetable Period for the time of year, in the year immediately preceding the Timetable Period which includes the first day and on which the Services scheduled in the New Working Timetable are the same as would have been scheduled on the first day but for Restrictions of Use reflected in the New Working Timetable for the first day; or
- (c) if no day is found under paragraph (a) or (b) above, such other day as the parties may agree or as may be determined in accordance with paragraph 12.2;

**“Corresponding Day Timetable”**

means, in relation to a Corresponding Day, the New Working Timetable or such other timetable as may be agreed between the parties or otherwise determined in accordance with paragraph 12.2;

**“Day 42 Statement”**

shall have the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 13.1(a);

**“Disrupted”**

means:

- (a) cancelled;
- (b) diverted off the Route over which it was scheduled to run in the Corresponding Day Timetable; and/or
- (c) starting or finishing short in comparison with the Service as timetabled in the Corresponding Day Timetable;

**“First Restriction”**

shall have the meaning ascribed to it in

|                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                          | paragraph 2.12(a)(i);                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>“First Restriction Period”</b>        | shall have the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.12(a)(ii);                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>“Further Restriction”</b>             | shall have the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.12(a)(ii)(B);                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>“High Speed Diversion”</b>            | means a situation in which a Train is diverted between successive Monitoring Points such that it travels a longer distance at a higher average speed than that normally scheduled and arrives at its destination at a time later than that specified in the New Working Timetable; |
| <b>“Initial Indexation Factor”</b>       | shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 7;                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>“Journey Time”</b>                    | shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>“Monitoring Point”</b>                | shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>“Network Rail Restriction of Use”</b> | means any Restriction of Use other than an Operator Restriction of Use;                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>“Notification Factor” or “NF”</b>     | shall have the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 9;                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>“Off Peak”</b>                        | where applicable, has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 5;                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>“Operator Restriction of Use”</b>     | means a Restriction of Use of the type referred to in paragraph 2.3;                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>“Over-run”</b>                        | shall have the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.12(a);                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>“Peak”</b>                            | where applicable, has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 5;                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>“Period”</b>                          | shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>“Public Holiday”</b>                  | means any day other than Saturday or Sunday                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

on which the banks in the City of London are not open for business;

**“Recovery Allowance”**

means an allowance for additional time incorporated in the New Working Timetable or (where the Train Operator requests that the allowance is not incorporated in the New Working Timetable and Network Rail complies with that request) the Applicable Timetable to allow a Train to regain time lost during an earlier part of its journey;

**“Restriction of Use”**

means, in respect of any day, any restriction of use of all or any part of the Routes (other than one caused by a Recovery Allowance which was contained in the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules relevant to that day notified to each Timetable Participant on or before D-26) which results in:

(a) a difference between the Applicable Timetable on that day as compared with the New Working Timetable in respect of that day; and/or

(b) a difference between the New Working Timetable on that day as compared with the Corresponding Day Timetable in respect of the Corresponding Day;

**“Restriction of Use Day”**

means a day on which a Network Rail Restriction of Use is taken or deemed to be taken;

**“RoU Claim Notice”**

means a notice issued by either party pursuant to paragraph 2.8;

**“RoU Liability”**

means any costs, direct losses and expenses (including any loss of revenue) reasonably incurred or reasonably expected to be incurred by the Train Operator (including any increase in RoU Variable Costs but net of any benefit arising from the taking of a Restriction of Use including any decrease in RoU Variable Costs) as a

|                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                | consequence of a Type 3 Restriction of Use or any Restriction(s) of Use covered by an SPD Claim;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>“RoU Variable Costs”</b>                    | means any Train Operator costs which vary as a result of a Restriction of Use or where applicable an Over-run arising directly from changes in train mileage including maintenance, fuel or the Traction Electricity Charge, the Variable Track Usage Charge and the Capacity Charge (as such terms are defined in Schedule 7);                                                                                                             |
| <b>“RPI”</b>                                   | shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 7;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>“SPD Claim”</b>                             | has the meaning specified in paragraph 2.10(d);                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>“SPD Notice”</b>                            | means a notice issued by either party pursuant to paragraph 2.10(a);                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>“SPD Period”</b>                            | means the period of any 3 or 7 (as the case may be) consecutive Periods in which it is agreed or determined that Sustained Planned Disruption has occurred in respect of the Train Operator, together with any subsequent consecutive Period up to but excluding the first Period to occur in respect of which it is agreed or determined that the test for Sustained Planned Disruption is not satisfied in respect of the Train Operator; |
| <b>“SPD Cost Threshold No.1”</b>               | means £304,750;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>“SPD Cost Threshold No.2”</b>               | means £609,500;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>“SPD Revenue Threshold No.1”</b>            | means 20% of a figure to be determined and published by ORR;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>“SPD Revenue Threshold No.2”</b>            | means 15% of a figure to be determined and published by ORR;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>“SPD Termination Notice”</b>                | has the meaning specified in paragraph 2.10(c);                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>“Sustained Planned Disruption” or “SPD”</b> | means a circumstance where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the aggregate of all of the Train Operator’s notional revenue losses calculated in</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

accordance with paragraph 3 for any one or more Restrictions of Use during:

- (i) 3 consecutive Periods is equal to or exceeds SPD Revenue Threshold No.1; or
- (ii) 7 consecutive Periods is equal to or exceeds SPD Revenue Threshold No.2,

and that the difference between the RoU Liability calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 and the Train Operator's notional revenue losses calculated in accordance with paragraph 3 and paragraph 4 for such Restrictions of Use during that period would be more than £10,000; or

- (b) in respect of any one or more Restrictions of Use during :

- (i) 3 consecutive Periods the difference between the Train Operator's RoU Liability (excluding any loss of revenue) calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 and the Train Operator's notional costs calculated under paragraph 4 would be more than SPD Cost Threshold No. 1; or

- (ii) 7 consecutive Periods the difference between the Train Operator's RoU Liability (excluding any loss of revenue) calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 and the Train Operator's notional costs calculated under paragraph 4 would be more than SPD Cost Threshold No. 2;

**“Service Code”**

shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;

|                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>“Service Group”</b>             | shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>“Train”</b>                     | shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>“Train–Bus–Train Pattern”</b>   | <p>means a situation where:</p> <p>(a) a Restriction of Use occurs on any section of track between:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) successive Monitoring Points; or</li> <li>(ii) the station of origin and the next Monitoring Point; and</li> </ul> <p>(b) the Train Operator uses a substitute bus or other alternative road service between any pair of stations situated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) between or including such successive Monitoring Points; or</li> <li>(ii) at or between the station of origin and the next Monitoring Point;</li> </ul> |
| <b>“Type 3 Restriction of Use”</b> | means a single Restriction of Use (including any Over-run) of more than 120 consecutive hours (including any part of that Restriction of Use which occurs during a Public Holiday);                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>“Unplanned Over-run Period”</b> | shall have the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.12(a)(ii)(A);                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>“Viable Transfer Point”</b>     | a station normally served by the services operated by the Train Operator, and equipped to enable the efficient and safe transfer of trainloads of passengers to and from alternative modes of transport, and/or services operated by other Train Operators, and which the parties have agreed, and set out in Annex B, shall be used for the purpose of providing bus substitution services, and for calculating the cost of bus substitution services in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 4 Costs Compensation for Network Rail Restrictions of Use”;                                    |



**“Week”** means a period commencing at 00:00:00 hours on any Saturday and ending at 23:59:59 hours on the next following Friday; and

**“White Period”** means any period during which the taking of a Restriction of Use would not result in any notional revenue loss being calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.

## **1.2 *Suspension Notices***

Wherever a Suspension Notice is in force, the effects of that Suspension Notice shall be the subject of Clause 3.6 and not of this Schedule 4. A Restriction of Use shall only be treated as a Restriction of Use to the extent that it involves a Restriction of Use of all or any part of the Routes which is not covered by the restriction under that Suspension Notice.

## **1.3 *Possession***

Any reference in this contract to the term “possession”, whether on its own or in composite, should be construed as “Restriction of Use” as defined in this Part 3.

## **1.4 *White Period***

In respect of any Type 3 Restriction of Use, where a Restriction of Use starts before and/or ends after a White Period, the entire length of the Restriction of Use shall be taken into account when counting the cumulative total hours.

## **2.1 *Entry into effect***

This Part 3 shall apply in respect of Restrictions of Use.

## **2.2 *Applicable Engineering Access Statement and the Network Code***

The provisions of this Part 3 shall be without prejudice to:

- (a) Network Rail’s right to take Restrictions of Use under or pursuant to the Applicable Engineering Access Statement;
- (b) the establishment of any amended Working Timetable under Part H of the Network Code; and
- (c) any rights pursuant to the Network Code that the Train Operator may have to challenge any decision of Network Rail.

### 2.3 *Operator Restriction of Use*

Network Rail shall not be obliged to make any payments to the Train Operator for any one or more Restrictions of Use to the extent:

- (a) required as a result of any damage to the Network or Environmental Damage which in each case:
- (b) arises wholly or mainly from the operations of the Train Operator or its failure to comply with its obligations under this contract; and
- (c) Network Rail demonstrates is in excess of fair wear and tear arising from use of the Network by the Train Operator;
- (d) requested by the Train Operator (other than for the purposes of inspection, maintenance, renewal or repair of the Network); or
- (e) required in connection with a Network Change proposed by the Train Operator under Condition G3.

### 2.4 *Network Rail payments*

Subject to paragraph 2.3, Network Rail shall make payments to the Train Operator (in accordance with the procedure in paragraph 13) in respect of a Network Rail Restriction of Use calculated in accordance with paragraph 2.7 and 2.10 where applicable.

### 2.5 NOT USED

### 2.6 NOT USED

### 2.7 *Type 3 Restriction of Use*

Where a Train Operator's RoU Liability exceeds £10,000 in respect of any Type 3 Restriction of Use Network Rail shall make payments to the Train Operator (in accordance with the procedure in paragraph 13) calculated in accordance with paragraph 7.

### 2.8 *RoU Claim Notice*

- (a) A Train Operator wishing to make a request for payments from Network Rail pursuant to Clause 2.7 must notify Network Rail that a Restriction of Use is a Type 3 Restriction of Use and that the circumstances in paragraph 2.7 apply within 56 days of the date of the end of such Type 3 Restriction of Use.

- (b) The notice referred to in paragraph 2.8(a) must include details of the estimate of the RoU Liability which the Train Operator has incurred in respect of the relevant Restriction of Use.

## 2.9 *Changes to Restrictions of Use*

- (a) Where a single Restriction of Use falls within the definition of a Type 3 Restriction of Use and there is a change which means that no Restriction of Use occurs or that the Restriction of Use no longer falls within the definition of a Type 3 Restriction of Use, then that Restriction of Use shall be treated, for the purposes of the calculation and payment of compensation, as if it had never been a Type 3 Restriction of Use (or, where applicable, as if it had not been a Restriction of Use).
- (b) Where a single Restriction of Use does not fall within the definition of a *Type 3 Restriction of Use* and there is a change which means that the Restriction of Use then falls within the definition of a Type 3 Restriction of Use, then that Restriction of Use shall be treated, for the purposes of the calculation and payment of compensation, as if it had always been a Type 3 Restriction of Use
- (c) For the purposes of paragraph 2.9(d), a Restriction of Use shall be deemed to be taken if and to the extent that it results in any difference between timetables of the type referred to in the definition of “Restriction of Use” when notified, whether or not the restriction giving rise to that Restriction of Use was subsequently cancelled in whole or in part.
- (d) Where a change to a Type 3 Restriction of Use reduces the impact of that Restriction of Use and accordingly changes it so that it no longer falls within the definition of a Type 3 Restriction of Use or means that there is no Restriction of Use in accordance with paragraph 2.9(a), the Train Operator may, within 28 days of the date on which the change to the Type 3 Restriction of Use was notified to the Train Operator by Network Rail, serve a notice on Network Rail which sets out any costs to which the Train Operator is already committed or has already incurred and any costs associated with responding to the Type 3 Restriction of Use (both before and after the change). The Train Operator shall be entitled to recover such costs provided that such costs are reasonable and were properly committed or incurred in the circumstances.

## 2.10 *Sustained Planned Disruption*

(a) If either party reasonably believes that a Sustained Planned Disruption has occurred then that party will be entitled to require that the costs and losses for the Restrictions of Use for the relevant services during the relevant SPD Period be calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 by serving a notice on the other (an “SPD Notice”) in accordance with paragraph 2.10(b).

(b) Unless otherwise agreed in writing, an SPD Notice must be served no later than the day falling 56 days after the issue of the Day 42 Statement which followed the end of the relevant SPD Period and must include a short explanation of why it reasonably believes a Sustained Planned Disruption has occurred and a statement of when the SPD Period commenced.

(c) Following the issue of an SPD Notice, either party may serve a notice (an “SPD Termination Notice”) stating that it reasonably believes that the relevant Sustained Planned Disruption is no longer occurring, such notice to include a short explanation of why the party serving it reasonably believes that the Sustained Planned Disruption has ceased and stating the Period in which such cessation has occurred. A party receiving an SPD Termination Notice shall within 30 days of its receipt by notice to the serving party either accept or reject the SPD Termination Notice and where it rejects the notice it shall include with its rejection notice a short explanation of why it reasonably believes the Sustained Planned Disruption is continuing. If the parties fail to reach agreement within 30 days after service of a rejection notice, or if prior to that date both parties agree that agreement is unlikely to be reached prior to that date, either party may notify the other that the dispute resolution procedure set out in paragraph 13.3 is to apply (save that references to paragraph 13.2 shall be construed as being references to this paragraph).

(d) Following the issue of an SPD Notice the party that issued that notice must serve a claim (an “SPD Claim”):

- (i) no later than the day falling 112 days after the issue of the Day 42 Statement for the last Period in the relevant SPD Period; or
- (ii) where an SPD Period has exceeded 13 consecutive Periods in length or upon the termination or expiry of this contract, whichever comes first, unless otherwise agreed in writing, no later than the day falling 112 days after the issue of the Day 42 Statement which followed the 13<sup>th</sup> consecutive Period or the termination or expiry of this contract (as applicable),

whichever is the earlier.

(e) Provided a party has issued an SPD Notice in accordance with paragraph 2.10(b), nothing in paragraph 2.10(d) shall prevent that party from issuing more than one SPD Claim in respect of the same Sustained Planned Disruption, provided that:

(i) each such SPD Claim relates to a different period within the said SPD Period (so there is no double-counting); and

(ii) no SPD Claim can be issued after the last day for serving notice specified under paragraph 2.10(d).

(f) An SPD Claim must include details of when and why that party reasonably believes that a Sustained Planned Disruption has occurred and in particular:

(i) if the claim is made by the Train Operator, such details as may reasonably be available of the RoU Liability which the Train Operator has incurred or reasonably expects to incur in respect of the relevant Restrictions of Use during the SPD Period; or

(ii) if the claim is made by Network Rail, the reasons why Network Rail reasonably believes that the Train Operator has been overcompensated or may be overcompensated by more than the relevant amount.

(g) Following the service of an SPD Claim, if and to the extent it is agreed or determined that a Sustained Planned Disruption has occurred in the period covered by the claim then the relevant party shall make payments to the other (in accordance with the procedure in paragraph 13) calculated in accordance with paragraph 8 in respect of the SPD Period (or where applicable the part of the SPD Period) covered by the SPD Claim.

#### 2.11 *Early notice of RoU Liability*

The parties may at any time engage in discussions on any matter likely to result in payments in respect of any RoU Liability and shall use reasonable endeavours to agree whether such RoU Liability calculated in accordance with paragraph 7 or 8 are likely to arise and/or what mitigating actions should be contemplated to reduce or avoid such RoU Liability. The party initiating such discussions shall provide to the other reasonable evidence in writing of why it thinks such RoU Liability will arise or mitigating actions should be contemplated. Following any agreement or determination that such RoU Liability are likely to arise in connection with one or more future Restrictions of Use or that mitigating actions should be contemplated, the parties shall where reasonably practicable engage in discussions on any options for mitigating

costs, revenue loss and/or disruption including any advance compensation for such Restriction(s) of Use to the extent such advance compensation would or would reasonably be expected to facilitate the mitigation of the contemplated disruption. Nothing in this contract shall prevent Network Rail and the Train Operator agreeing any options for mitigating costs and disruption in respect of any Restriction(s) of Use. Unless otherwise agreed, the timescales for claiming RoU Liability shall still apply.

## 2.12 *Over-runs*

- (a) An over-run ("Over-run") occurs where:
  - (i) there is a Restriction of Use which is not an Operator Restriction of Use (the "First Restriction"); and
  - (ii) following the end of the relevant period of difference between timetables referred to in sub-paragraphs (a) and (b) of the definition of Restriction of Use which served to establish the existence of that Restriction of Use (the "First Restriction Period"), there is either:
    - (A) a further period of at least one hour during which Services are Disrupted due to (1) any incident attributed under Schedule 8 to circumstances arising from any restriction of operation of the Network which are a consequence of the First Restriction or (2) any act or omission in connection with any activities planned or undertaken which are directly attributable to the First Restriction (including any failure to remove the First Restriction by the time scheduled for its removal in the Applicable Engineering Access Statement) but excluding any act or omission by the Train Operator for which it would be allocated responsibility under this contract (the "Unplanned Over-run Period"); and/or
    - (B) a further Restriction of Use is taken which is at the same location as all or part of the First Restriction and directly connected with or attributable to any activities undertaken or planned to be undertaken under the First Restriction (a "Further Restriction" ),

in each case without there being any intervening period between the First Restriction and the relevant Unplanned Over-run Period or Further Restriction, which is not either a White Period, Unplanned Over-run Period or a Further Restriction.

(b) Where a Restriction of Use is subject to one or more Over-runs, then the entire duration from the start of the First Restriction to the end of the last Over-run in respect of the Restriction of Use shall be treated as making up a single Restriction of Use.

(c) This paragraph 2.12 shall not result in any Unplanned Over-run Period being subject to either revenue loss compensation for Network Rail Restrictions of Use under paragraph 3 or costs compensation for Network Rail Restrictions of Use under paragraph 4.

### **3. Notional revenue loss for Network Rail Restrictions of Use**

#### **3.1 *Basis for calculations***

For each Period and for each Service Group, Network Rail shall calculate the notional revenue loss in respect of all Network Rail Restrictions of Use on each Restriction of Use Day in that Period by applying, in accordance with paragraphs 3.2 and 3.3, the formulae in paragraphs 3.4, 3.5 and 3.6. For the purposes of determining for this paragraph 3 to which Service Group a particular Train is allocated, a Train (or portion of a Train) shall be treated as allocated to a particular Service Group by reference to its Service Code, provided that where a particular Train (or portion of a Train) is given a different Service Code in the New Working Timetable from the Service Code given to it in the Applicable Timetable or a different Service Code in the Corresponding Day Timetable from the Service Code given to it in the New Working Timetable it shall be treated as part of the Service Group in relation to whichever of those Service Codes most correctly applies to that Train or, where both Service Codes could equally apply to that Train, to the Service Code applied to that Train in the New Working Timetable.

#### **3.2 *Separate calculations***

In applying the formula in paragraph 3.4, Network Rail shall calculate the notional revenue loss separately in respect of all:

- (a) Network Rail Restrictions of Use which are taken into account in the New Working Timetable; and
- (b) Network Rail Restrictions of Use which are not so taken into account but are taken into account in the Applicable Timetable.

#### **3.3 *Meaning of T1 and T2***

In paragraph 3.4:

- (a) where Network Rail is making the calculation for the purpose of paragraph 3.2(a), T1 shall mean the Corresponding Day Timetable and T2 shall mean the New Working Timetable for the Restriction of Use Day; and
- (b) where Network Rail is making the calculation for the purpose of paragraph 3.2(b), T1 shall mean the New Working Timetable for the Restriction of Use Day and T2 shall mean the Applicable Timetable for the Restriction of Use Day.

### 3.4 Formula

The formula referred to in paragraph 3.1 is as follows:

$$NRP = \Sigma((WACM + NREJT) \bullet BF \bullet NRPR \bullet NF)$$

where:

NRP is the Network Rail Payment;

- (a)  $\Sigma$  is the sum across all Network Rail Restrictions of Use and all Restriction of Use Days in the Period;
- (b) WACM is the weighted average of Cancellation Minutes for the Service(s) (or part(s) thereof) in that Service Group as a result of a Network Rail Restriction of Use, calculated according to the following formula:

$$WACM = (CM - NRPP) \bullet \Sigma \frac{(MPW \bullet CS)}{SS}$$

where:

CM is the Cancellation Minutes for the Service Group in question specified in column J of Appendix 1 to Schedule 8;

NRPP is the Network Rail performance point for the Service Group in question specified in column B of Appendix 1 to Schedule 8;

$\Sigma$  is the sum across all Monitoring Points in the Service Group;

MPW is the weighting attributable to the Monitoring Point, as specified in column O of Appendix 1 to Schedule 8;

CS is the number by which the number of stops at that Monitoring Point scheduled for that day in T2 is less than SS as a result of the Network Rail Restriction of Use; and



SS is the number of stops at the Monitoring Point scheduled for that day in T1;

- (c) NREJT is the extended Journey Time as a result of a Network Rail Restriction of Use in respect of Services in that Service Group, for the Restriction of Use Day, being Services which are not cancelled, calculated according to the following formula:

$$NREJT = EJT \bullet \left(1 - \frac{\sum (MPW \bullet CS)}{SS}\right)$$

where:

$\Sigma$ , MPW, CS and SS have the meanings ascribed to them in paragraph 3.4(b) above; and

EJT is the extended Journey Time as a result of a Network Rail Restriction of Use in respect of Services in that Service Group calculated according to the following formula:

if no Train in that Service Group is scheduled in T2 for that day, then EJT shall equal 0;

if otherwise,

EJT is the lesser of:

the number of minutes specified as the Cap for the Service Group in column K of Appendix 1 to Schedule 8; and

$AJT \bullet ((u-v)/v)$ ,

provided always that if v equals or is greater than u, EJT shall equal 0;

where:

AJT is the average Journey Time for Trains in the Service Group scheduled for that day in T1, and shall be equal to the aggregate of the Journey Times scheduled in T1 in respect of such Trains divided by the aggregate number of Journeys scheduled in T1 in respect of such Trains;

u is the average speed of Trains in the Service Group scheduled for that day in T1, and shall be equal to the aggregate of the number of miles scheduled to be run in

T1 by such Trains divided by the aggregate of the Journey Times scheduled in T1 in respect of such Trains; and

- v is the speed to which the average speed of Trains in the Service Group scheduled for that day in T2 is reduced as a result of the Network Rail Restrictions of Use (calculated by reference to the aggregate of the number of miles which such Trains are scheduled to run in T2 divided by the aggregate of the end to end Journey Times scheduled in T2 in respect of such Trains),

and for the purposes of this paragraph 3.4:

“Journey”

means the journey of the Train scheduled in the relevant timetable from its station of origin to its destination station; provided that if a Train crosses a Service Group boundary then in respect of each Service Group the Train’s station of origin and destination station shall respectively mean the station at which the Train commences that part of its journey in that Service Group and the station at which it ends that part of its journey in that Service Group; and that where any Train splits to become more than one Train then that part of the Train’s journey up to the station where it splits shall be treated as one journey and each Train into which the Train splits shall be treated as making a separate journey; and

“Journey Time”

shall be calculated in respect of each journey by reference to the difference in minutes between the time of departure from the station of origin and the time of arrival at the destination station;

- (d) BF is the busyness factor, as calculated for each Service Group according to the following formula:

$$BF = \frac{\sum (MPW \bullet SS)}{AS}$$

where:

- AS is the average number of stops at the Monitoring Point (being the Monitoring Point referred to in the definition of MPW) per day scheduled in the Bi-annual Timetable; and

MPW and SS have the meanings ascribed to them in paragraph 3.4(b);  
and

- (e) NRPR is the Network Rail payment rate specified in column E of Appendix 1 to Schedule 8, as indexed according to the relevant provisions of Schedule 8.

### 3.5 *High Speed Diversions*

Where there is a High Speed Diversion and WACM, as defined in paragraph 3.4(b), has a value equal to or less than zero then the following formula shall apply:

$$\text{ANRP} = \frac{\text{TDR}_{\text{SG}}}{\text{TDT}_{\text{SG}}} \bullet (\text{CM} - \text{NRPP}) \bullet \text{NRPR} \bullet \text{BF} \bullet \text{NF}$$

where:

ANRP is the additional Network Rail payment;

$\text{TDR}_{\text{SG}}$  is, in respect of each Service Group and each Restriction of Use Day on which a High Speed Diversion applies, the number of Trains in the Service Group scheduled in T2 to be subject to the High Speed Diversion;

$\text{TDT}_{\text{SG}}$  is the total number of Trains scheduled to be run in the Service Group in T1;

T1 and T2 shall have the meanings ascribed to them in paragraph 3.3; and

CM, NRPP, NRPR and BF shall have the meanings ascribed to them in paragraph 3.4.

In such a situation, the Train Operator shall provide Network Rail with evidence, either that the High Speed Diversion has been common for the Services in question in the past or that the High Speed Diversion would arise as a result of a change in circumstances.

In default of agreement, in relation to the adequacy of such evidence, between the Train Operator and Network Rail within 28 days after the New Working Timetable is issued reflecting the relevant Network Rail Restriction of Use, the mechanism and procedure for dispute resolution set out in paragraphs 13.2, 13.3 and 13.4 shall apply.

### 3.6 *Train-Bus-Train Patterns*

If any Service Group on any day is subject to a Train-Bus-Train Pattern on account of a Network Rail Restriction of Use, and where WACM, as defined in

paragraph 3.4(b), has a value equal to or less than zero, then Network Rail shall pay to the Train Operator an additional payment calculated as follows:

$$\text{ANRP} = \frac{\text{TTS}_{\text{SG}}}{\text{TTR}_{\text{SG}}} \bullet (\text{CM} - \text{NRPP}) \bullet \text{DV} \bullet \text{NRPR} \bullet \text{BF} \bullet \text{NF}$$

where:

ANRP is the additional Network Rail payment;

TTSSG is the total number of Trains scheduled in T2 to be run in the Service Group for that Restriction of Use Day to terminate at a destination other than that shown for those Trains due to a Train-Bus-Train Pattern in T1;

TTR<sub>SG</sub> is the total number of Trains scheduled to be run in the Service Group in T1;

T1 and T2 shall have the meanings ascribed to them in paragraph 3.3;

CM, NRPP, NRPR and BF shall have the meanings ascribed to them in paragraph 3.4; and

DV shall have the value of 0.125,

provided that if:

TTR<sub>SG</sub> is less than TTS<sub>SG</sub> then  $\frac{\text{TTS}_{\text{SG}}}{\text{TTR}_{\text{SG}}}$  shall be deemed to have the value of one.

In such a situation the Train Operator shall provide Network Rail with evidence, either that the Train-Bus-Train Pattern resulting from the Network Rail Restriction of Use is an arrangement that has been commonly used in the past by that Train Operator on the Services in question, or that it has arisen due to a change in circumstances.

In default of agreement, in relation to the adequacy of such evidence, between the Train Operator and Network Rail within 28 days after the New Working Timetable is issued reflecting the relevant Network Rail Restriction of Use, the mechanism and procedure for dispute resolution set out in paragraphs 13.2, 13.3 and 13.4 shall apply.

## 4. Notional costs consequent on Network Rail Restrictions of Use

### 4.1 *Basis for calculations*

For each Period and for each Service Group, Network Rail shall calculate the notional costs of all Network Rail Restrictions of Use on each Restriction of Use Day in that Period by applying the formulae in paragraph 4.2. For the purposes of determining for this paragraph 4 to which Service Group a particular Train is allocated, a Train (or portion of a Train) shall be treated as allocated to a particular Service Group by reference to its Service Code, provided that where a particular Train (or portion of a Train) is given a different Service Code in the New Working Timetable from the Service Code given to it in the Applicable Timetable or a different Service Code in the Corresponding Day Timetable from the Service Code given to it in the New Working Timetable it shall be treated as part of the Service Group in relation to whichever of those Service Codes most correctly applies to that Train or, where both Service Codes could equally apply to that Train, to the Service Code applied to that Train in the New Working Timetable.

### 4.2 *Notional cost calculation formula*

The formula referred to in paragraph 4.1 is as follows:

$$\text{Notional cost} = \sum (\text{RRBC} + \text{TMC})$$

where:

- (a)  $\sum$  is the sum across all applicable Network Rail Restrictions of Use and all Restriction of Use Days in the Period;
- (b) RRBC is the rail replacement bus cost, for the Service(s) (or part(s) thereof) in that Service Group as a result of a Network Rail Restriction of Use, calculated according to the following formula:

$$\text{RRBC} = \text{EBM} \times \text{EBMPR}$$

Where:

EBM is the number of estimated bus miles for the Train Operator; and

EBMPR is the payment rate per EBM, which is £14.29.

If there is full bus replacement

$$EBM = EBMW \times FBR\text{miles}$$

If there is partial bus replacement

$$EBM = EBMW \times 0.5 \times PBR\text{miles} \times ITS$$

If there is no bus replacement (as set out in Annex B to this Part 3 of Schedule 4)

$$EBM = EBMW \times 0$$

where:

EBMW is the weighting applicable to the affected section of route, as set out in Annex B to this Part 3 of Schedule 4;

FBRmiles is the length of route, in miles, between the applicable pair of Viable Transfer Points over which train services are affected and for which full bus replacement is required as set out in Annex B to this Part 3 of Schedule 4;

PBRmiles is the length of route, in miles, between the applicable pair of Viable Transfer Points over which train services are affected and for which partial bus replacement is required as set out in Annex B to this Part 3 of Schedule 4;

ITS is 1 or the percentage of trains stopping at intermediate stations for those cases where EBMW = 50%; and

(c) TMC is the cost or saving resulting from train mileage change, for the Service(s) (or part(s) thereof) in that Service Group as a result of a Network Rail Restriction of Use, calculated according to the following formula:

$$TMC = TM \times TMPR$$

where:

TM is the change in train mileage; and

TMPR is the payment rate per train mile, as stipulated in Annex C to this Part 3 of Schedule 4.

## 5. Estimated bus miles change mechanism

### 5.1 Circumstances in which parties agree to amend Annex B

Either party may by notice to the other propose that Annex B be amended in accordance with this paragraph 5.

## 5.2 *Procedure for amendments to Annex B*

- (a) The party who wishes to amend Annex B shall notify the other party of any such proposed change and the date from which it proposes that such change will have effect:
  - (i) where such change relates to a forthcoming timetable change, on or before the first day of the month which falls 6 months before the relevant Principal Change Date or Subsidiary Change Date on which that timetable change is due to occur; and
  - (ii) in any other case prior to the date from which it proposes such change shall have effect.
- (b) Any notice under sub-paragraph 5.2(a) shall specify as far as possible that party's proposed amendments to Annex B. Promptly following the service of any such notice the parties shall endeavour to agree whether Annex B should be amended in accordance with this paragraph 5 and if so the amendments.
- (c) If the parties fail to reach agreement within 90 days after service of the relevant notice, or if prior to that date both parties agree that agreement is unlikely to be reached prior to that date, the matter may be referred for resolution in accordance with the ADRR. In respect of any such dispute which is referred for resolution under the ADRR the parties shall agree in a Procedure Agreement, as defined in the ADRR, that the relevant ADRR Forum shall have regard to any relevant criteria and/or policy statement most recently issued by ORR.
- (d) Any amendment to Annex B shall take effect only when it has been approved by ORR under section 22 of the Act. Accordingly, as soon as reasonably practicable after any such amendment is agreed or determined in accordance with this paragraph 5, the parties shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that ORR is furnished with such amendment and sufficient information and evidence as it shall require to determine whether or not to approve the amendment.
- (e) Any amendment to Annex B shall apply with effect from:
  - (i) the relevant Principal Change Date or Subsidiary Change Date (where paragraph 5.2 (a) (i) applies); or
  - (ii) subject to paragraph 5.2 (d) the date proposed by the party requesting the change in accordance with paragraph 5.2 (a) (ii)

(unless otherwise agreed by the parties or determined by the expert in relation to the change).

### **5.3 *Costs of implementing amendment***

The party proposing the amendment to Annex B shall (subject to any determination of an expert as to costs, where a matter is referred to that expert under paragraph 5.2(c)) pay 90 percent of costs incurred by or on behalf of the other party in assessing and implementing the amendments to Annex B, provided that those costs shall be the minimum reasonably necessary to assess and implement that amendment.

## **6. Not Used**

## **7. RoU Liability compensation for Type 3 Restrictions of Use**

### **7.1 *Compensation arrangements***

- (a) Following receipt of an RoU Claim Notice in respect of a Type 3 Restriction of Use, Network Rail and the Train Operator shall (if they have not already done so) commence negotiations in respect of the RoU Liability compensation to be paid by Network Rail to the Train Operator in respect of the Type 3 Restriction of Use and, subject to paragraph 10, shall continue such negotiations in good faith until they are concluded.
- (b) Once the compensation referred to in paragraph 7.1(a) has been agreed or determined the compensation to be paid by Network Rail to the Train Operator shall be the full amount of the RoU Liability actually incurred by the Train Operator less any amounts received by the Train Operator from Network Rail in respect of such Restriction of Use (including in respect of the period of any Unplanned Over-run Period as referred to in paragraph 2.12(a)(ii) (A) any amounts under Schedule 8).
- (c) Network Rail shall include in the statement provided by it in respect of each Period under paragraph 13.1(a) details of the compensation agreed or determined under this paragraph 7 and paragraph 10 to be payable in respect of any Type 3 Restriction of Use taken in that Period and that compensation shall be due and payable by the relevant party to the other in accordance with paragraph 13.1.



## **8. Sustained Planned Disruption payments**

### **8.1 *Payment arrangements***

- (a) Following an agreement or determination that a Sustained Planned Disruption has occurred during an SPD Period, Network Rail and the Train Operator shall (if they have not already done so) commence negotiations in respect of the RoU Liability compensation to be paid by Network Rail to the Train Operator in respect of the Restrictions of Use during the relevant SPD Period and, subject to paragraph 10, shall continue such negotiations in good faith until they are concluded.
- (b) Once the compensation referred to in paragraph 8.1(a) has been agreed or determined the compensation to be paid by Network Rail to the Train Operator in respect of the Restrictions of Use during the relevant SPD Period shall be the full amount of the RoU Liability actually incurred by the Train Operator less any amounts received by the Train Operator from Network Rail in respect of such Restrictions of Use (including in respect of the period of any Unplanned Over-run Period as referred to in paragraph 2.12(a)(ii)(A) any amounts under Schedule 8)
- (c) Following any agreement or determination of an amount to be paid by Network Rail to the Train Operator in respect of a Sustained Planned Disruption that amount shall (subject to the terms of any compensation arrangements agreed in writing between the parties) be due and payable by Network Rail to the Train Operator in accordance with paragraph 13.1.
- (d) Where a Sustained Planned Disruption applies due to a circumstance which it is agreed or determined affects a part only of the Train Operator's services (including whether by reference to geographic location or Service Group), then in agreeing or determining the RoU Liability in respect of that SPD the RoU Liability in respect of the part of the Train Operator's services not affected by that circumstance shall (unless otherwise proven) be presumed to be equal to the payments made under paragraphs 3 and 4 of this Schedule 4 in respect of those other services.

## **9. Notification Factors**

### **9.1 *Early notification***

The Notification Factor in respect of a Network Rail Restriction of Use in respect of any Service Group shall have the value specified for that Service Group in column C of Annex A to this Part 3 if and to the extent that:

- (a) the Network Rail Restriction of Use is reflected in the New Working Timetable; or
- (b)
  - (i) details of the Network Rail Restriction of Use are notified to the Train Operator on or before D-26 for the Timetable Period in respect of the Restriction of Use Day but, at the request of the Train Operator (as accepted by Network Rail), are not reflected in the New Working Timetable; and
  - (ii) subject to paragraph 9.1(b)(iii), the Network Rail Restriction of Use is reflected in the Working Timetable as entered into the train service database at 22:00 hours on the day which is 12 Weeks before the Restriction of Use Day; or
  - (iii) where paragraph 9.1(b)(ii) does not apply because the Train Operator has failed to give Network Rail a revised Access Proposal in accordance with Condition D3.4.9, the Network Rail Restriction of Use is reflected in the Applicable Timetable in respect of the Restriction of Use Day.

### **9.2 *Notification by TW-22***

The NF in respect of a Network Rail Restriction of Use in respect of any Service Group shall have the value specified for that Service Group in column D of Annex A to this Part 3 if and to the extent that paragraph 9.1 does not apply, and:

- (a) details of the Network Rail Restriction of Use are notified to the Train Operator by TW -22; and
- (b)
  - (i) the Network Rail Restriction of Use is reflected in the Working Timetable as entered into the train service database at 22:00

hours on the day which is 12 Weeks before the Restriction of Use Day; or

- (ii) where paragraph 9.2(b)(i) does not apply because the Train Operator has failed to give Network Rail a revised Access Proposal in accordance with Condition D3.4.9, the Network Rail Restriction of Use is reflected in the Applicable Timetable in respect of the Restriction of Use Day.

### **9.3** *Late Notification*

The NF in respect of a Network Rail Restriction of Use in respect of any Service Group shall have the value specified for that Service Group in column E of Annex A to this Part 3 if and to the extent paragraphs 9.1 and 9.2 do not apply but the Network Rail Restriction of Use is reflected in the Applicable Timetable, and includes where paragraph 9.1(b) or paragraph 9.2 would have been applicable but for a failure by Network Rail to fulfil the terms of paragraph 9.1(b)(ii) or paragraph 9.2(b)(i) respectively, notwithstanding the Train Operator having given a revised Access Proposal in accordance with Condition D3.4.9.

## **10. Dispute resolution**

If the Train Operator and Network Rail fail to reach agreement as required under paragraph 2.10 (g), 2.11, 7 or 8 within 28 days following provision of the RoU Claim Notice, either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR.

## **11. Schedule 8 application**

If and to the extent that a Network Rail Restriction of Use is not reflected in the Applicable Timetable for the Restriction of Use Day, the amount of compensation (if any) shall be calculated in accordance with Schedule 8 (to the exclusion of any compensation under this Schedule 4 except as provided in paragraphs 2.12).

## **12. Restriction of Use Day and Corresponding Day**

### **12.1** *Information provision*

In respect of any Restriction of Use Day for which there is either notional revenue loss or notional costs to be calculated in a Period under paragraphs 3 and 4, Network Rail shall accurately record such information as it uses and

as may properly and reasonably be required to make the calculations required under paragraphs 3 and 4 (including the determination of NF and the relevant version of the Working Timetable referred to in paragraph 9.1(b)(ii) or paragraph 9.2(b)(i). Network Rail shall maintain that information until the calculations required under paragraphs 3 and 4 in respect of that Period are finally agreed or determined and provide such information to the Train Operator at its reasonable request.

## **12.2 Corresponding Day**

- (a) If, for the purpose of identifying a Corresponding Day, no day is found under paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of the definition “Corresponding Day” and the parties have failed to reach agreement on the Corresponding Day by the date falling eight Weeks before the relevant Timetable Change Date then either party may require that the identification of the Corresponding Day be resolved as a dispute in accordance with the ADRR.
- (b) The parties shall agree in a Procedure Agreement, as defined in the ADRR, that the relevant ADRR Forum's remit shall be to:
  - (i) reach a decision which is fair and reasonable; and
  - (ii) identify the day in either any version of the Working Timetable or any version of the New Working Timetable on or before D -26 in either case which has been produced in accordance with the Network Code as at the Restriction of Use Day and which most closely reflects the Services which would have been scheduled on the first day (as that term is used in the definition of Corresponding Day save that in respect of any Restriction of Use lasting more than two Timetable Periods, the first day may occur in any year preceding the Timetable Period) but for Restrictions of Use reflected in the New Working Timetable for the first day; or
  - (iii) where a Corresponding Day cannot be identified in accordance with paragraph 12.2(b)(ii) above, determine a notional Corresponding Day. The relevant ADRR Forum may have regard, where appropriate, to any pattern of services which may reasonably be expected to be operated during the relevant period when the Restriction of Use is being taken in the event of the permanent absence of any Corresponding Day.

### **13. Payment procedures**

#### **13.1 *Network Rail Restrictions of Use***

Within 14 days after the end of each Period, Network Rail shall provide to the Train Operator a statement (the “Day 42 Statement”) showing:

- (a) all Network Rail Restrictions of Use taken during that Period;
- (b) any notional revenue losses and notional costs calculated in accordance with paragraphs 3 and/or 4 in respect of the Network Rail Restrictions of Use identified; and
- (c) following any agreement or determination in the Period referred to in paragraph 13.1(a) of any RoU Liability in respect of a Type 3 Restriction of Use or a Sustained Planned Disruption (as applicable), any payment to be made by Network Rail to the Train Operator,

in sufficient detail to enable the Train Operator to make an informed assessment thereof.

#### **13.2 *Disputes***

Within 10 days of receipt of a statement from Network Rail under paragraph 13.1, the Train Operator shall notify Network Rail of any aspects of the statement which it disputes, giving reasons for any dispute. Save to the extent that disputes are so notified, the Train Operator shall be deemed to have agreed the contents of the statement.

#### **13.3 *Dispute resolution***

The procedure for resolving disputes notified under paragraph 13.2 shall be as follows:

- (a) within seven days of service of any notice under paragraph 13.2, the parties shall meet to discuss the disputed aspects of the statement with a view to resolving all disputes in good faith;
- (b) if, within seven days of that meeting (the “first meeting”), the parties are for any reason still unable to agree the disputed aspects of the statement, each party shall promptly (and in any event within seven days) prepare a written summary of the disputed aspects of the statement and the reasons for each such dispute and shall submit the summaries to the senior officer of each party;
- (c) within 28 days of the first meeting, the senior officers shall meet with a

view to resolving all disputes;

- (d) if no resolution results within 14 days of that meeting, either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR.

#### 13.4 *Payments in the event of a dispute*

Where any amount under paragraph 13.1 is in dispute:

- (a) the undisputed amount shall be paid in accordance with paragraph 13.1;
- (b) the disputed amount shall be paid within 28 days after the dispute is resolved or determined to the extent that the amount in dispute is adjudged or resolved to be payable; and
- (c) the disputed amount shall carry interest (incurred daily and compounded monthly) at the Default Interest Rate from the date on which such amount would but for such dispute have been due to be paid until the date of payment.

#### 14. **Indexation**

14.1 The formula applicable to this paragraph 14 is:

$$R_t = R_{t-1} \cdot \left( 1 + \frac{(RPI_{t-1} - RPI_{t-2})}{RPI_{t-2}} \right)$$

where:

$R_t$  is the relevant rate in the Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$R_{t-1}$  is the relevant rate in the Relevant Year  $t-1$ ;

$RPI_{t-1}$  means the RPI published or determined with respect to the month of November in Relevant Year  $t-1$ ;

$RPI_{t-2}$  means the RPI published or determined with respect to the month of November in Relevant Year  $t-2$ .

14.2 Each of the EBMPR and TMPR (respectively defined in paragraph 4.2) shall be adjusted in respect of Periods in Relevant Year  $t$  in accordance with the formula set out in paragraph 14.1 except that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2014,  $R_t$  shall have the value specified in:

- (a) paragraph 4.2 in respect of the EBMPR, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor; and

(b) in Annex C to this Part 3 of Schedule 4 in respect of TMPR, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor,

and in the next following Relevant Year  $R_{t-1}$  shall respectively have the same value.

- 14.3 Each of the SPD Cost Threshold No.1 and SPD Cost Threshold No.2 shall be adjusted in respect of Periods in Relevant Year  $t$  in accordance with the formula set out in paragraph 14.1 except that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2014,  $R_t$  shall have the relevant value specified in the definition of “SPD Cost Threshold No.1”, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor, or “SPD Cost Threshold No. 2, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor, as appropriate, set out in paragraph 1.1 of this Schedule 4 and in the next following Relevant Year  $R_{t-1}$  shall respectively have the same value.

### Annex A to Part 3 of Schedule 4 – Notification Factors

|                                          | A                  | B          | C       | D        | E           |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------|---------|----------|-------------|
| Service Group Description                | Service Group Code | Type       | By D-26 | By TW-22 | After TW-22 |
| <b>First/Keolis Transpennine Limited</b> |                    |            |         |          |             |
| North TransPennine                       | EA01               | All Trains | 0.45    | 0.65     | 0.85        |
| South TransPennine                       | EA02               | All Trains | 0.45    | 0.65     | 0.85        |
| North West                               | EA03               | All Trains | 0.45    | 0.65     | 0.85        |
| Manchester Airport - Blackpool North     | EA06               | All Trains | 0.45    | 0.65     | 0.85        |
| Preston - Scotland                       | EA07               | All Trains | 0.45    | 0.65     | 0.85        |
| <b>Abellio Greater Anglia Limited</b>    |                    |            |         |          |             |
| Great Eastern Inners                     | EB01               | Off Peak   | 0.55    | 0.7      | 0.85        |
| Great Eastern Inners                     | EB01               | Peak       | 0.55    | 0.7      | 0.85        |
| Southend & Southminster                  | EB02               | Off Peak   | 0.55    | 0.7      | 0.85        |
| Southend & Southminster                  | EB02               | Peak       | 0.55    | 0.7      | 0.85        |
| Great Eastern Outers                     | EB03               | Off Peak   | 0.55    | 0.7      | 0.85        |
| Great Eastern Outers                     | EB03               | Peak       | 0.55    | 0.7      | 0.85        |
| Anglia Inter City                        | EB04               | Off Peak   | 0.5     | 0.68     | 0.85        |
| Anglia Inter City                        | EB04               | Peak       | 0.5     | 0.68     | 0.85        |
| Anglia Locals                            | EB05               | All Trains | 0.5     | 0.68     | 0.85        |
| West Anglia Outers                       | EB06               | Off Peak   | 0.45    | 0.65     | 0.85        |
| West Anglia Outers                       | EB06               | Peak       | 0.45    | 0.65     | 0.85        |
| West Anglia Inners                       | EB07               | Off Peak   | 0.55    | 0.7      | 0.85        |
| West Anglia Inners                       | EB07               | Peak       | 0.55    | 0.7      | 0.85        |
| <b>Northern Rail Limited</b>             |                    |            |         |          |             |
| Tyne, Tees & Wear                        | ED01               | All Trains | 0.5     | 0.68     | 0.85        |
| Lancashire & Cumbria                     | ED02               | All Trains | 0.5     | 0.68     | 0.85        |
| West & North Yorkshire Inter Urban       | ED04               | All Trains | 0.5     | 0.68     | 0.85        |
| West & North Yorkshire Local             | ED05               | All Trains | 0.5     | 0.68     | 0.85        |
| South & East Yorkshire Inter Urban       | ED06               | All Trains | 0.5     | 0.68     | 0.85        |



|                                                   |      |            |      |      |      |
|---------------------------------------------------|------|------------|------|------|------|
| South & East Yorkshire Local                      | ED07 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| North Manchester                                  | ED08 | Off Peak   | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| North Manchester                                  | ED08 | Peak       | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Merseyrail City Lines                             | ED09 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| South Manchester                                  | ED10 | Off Peak   | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| South Manchester                                  | ED10 | Peak       | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| <b>Heathrow Express Operating Company Limited</b> |      |            |      |      |      |
| Hayes & Harlington Shuttle                        | EE02 | All Trains | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| <b>First Greater Western Limited</b>              |      |            |      |      |      |
| Heathrow Local Service                            | EE01 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Heathrow Local Service                            | EE01 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| London - Bristol                                  | EF01 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| London - South Wales                              | EF02 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| London - Cotswolds                                | EF03 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| London - West Of England                          | EF04 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Outer Thames Valley - London                      | EF05 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Outer Thames Valley - London                      | EF05 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Inner Thames Valley - London                      | EF06 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Inner Thames Valley - London                      | EF06 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Reading & Oxford Suburban                         | EF07 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Thames Valley Branches                            | EF08 | All Trains | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| North Downs                                       | EF09 | All Trains | 0.45 | 0.65 | 0.85 |
| Bristol Suburban                                  | EF10 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Devon                                             | EF11 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Plymouth & Cornwall                               | EF12 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| South Wales - South Coast                         | EF13 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| <b>First Capital Connect Limited</b>              |      |            |      |      |      |
| Bedford Mainline                                  | EG01 | Off Peak   | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Bedford Mainline                                  | EG01 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.70 | 0.85 |
| Brighton Mainline                                 | EG02 | Off Peak   | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Brighton Mainline                                 | EG02 | Peak       | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |

|                                                  |      |            |      |      |      |
|--------------------------------------------------|------|------------|------|------|------|
| South London                                     | EG03 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| South London                                     | EG03 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Northern Inners                                  | EG04 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Northern Inners                                  | EG04 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Northern Outers                                  | EG05 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Northern Outers                                  | EG05 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Kentish Town - Blackfriars (Joint)               | EG06 | All Trains | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| <b>XC Trains Limited</b>                         |      |            |      |      |      |
| CrossCountry Inter City                          | EH01 | All Trains | 0.45 | 0.65 | 0.85 |
| CrossCountry Local & Provincial                  | EH02 | All Trains | 0.45 | 0.65 | 0.85 |
| <b>London &amp; Birmingham Railway Limited</b>   |      |            |      |      |      |
| West Midlands - Snow Hill                        | EJ01 | Off Peak   | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| West Midlands - Snow Hill                        | EJ01 | Peak       | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Trent Valley                                     | EJ02 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| West Midlands - New Street (Local)               | EJ03 | Off Peak   | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| West Midlands - New Street (Local)               | EJ03 | Peak       | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| West Midlands Inter Urban                        | EJ04 | All Trains | 0.45 | 0.65 | 0.85 |
| WCML: London - Northampton                       | EJ05 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| WCML: London - Northampton                       | EJ05 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| WCML: Branches                                   | EJ06 | All Trains | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| <b>London Overground Rail Operations Limited</b> |      |            |      |      |      |
| Orbitals                                         | EK01 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Orbitals                                         | EK01 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| London - Watford (D.C Lines)                     | EK02 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| London - Watford (D.C Lines)                     | EK02 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| East London Lines                                | EK03 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| East London Lines                                | EK03 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| <b>East Midlands Trains Limited</b>              |      |            |      |      |      |
| East Midlands Local                              | EM01 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| East Midlands Regional                           | EM02 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Liverpool - Norwich                              | EM03 | All Trains | 0.45 | 0.65 | 0.85 |

|                                                        |      |            |      |      |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------|------|------------|------|------|------|
| East Midlands Inter City                               | EM04 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| East Midlands Inter Urban                              | EM05 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| <b>First ScotRail Limited</b>                          |      |            |      |      |      |
| Express                                                | HA01 | All Trains | 0.45 | 0.65 | 0.85 |
| East Coast Suburban                                    | HA02 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| South West Rural                                       | HA03 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Highland Rural                                         | HA04 | All Trains | 0.45 | 0.65 | 0.85 |
| Strathclyde Electric                                   | HA06 | Off Peak   | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Strathclyde Electric                                   | HA06 | Peak       | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Strathclyde Pte Diesel                                 | HA07 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Qualifying Sleepers                                    | HA11 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| <b>East Coast Main Line Company Limited</b>            |      |            |      |      |      |
| Anglo-Scottish                                         | HB01 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| West Yorkshire                                         | HB02 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| West Yorkshire (Kings X - Bradford / Hull)             | HB04 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Anglo-Scottish (Aberdeen / Inverness)                  | HB05 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| <b>Merseyrail Electrics 2002 Limited</b>               |      |            |      |      |      |
| Northern Lines                                         | HE01 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Wirral Lines                                           | HE02 | All Trains | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| <b>West Coast Trains Limited</b>                       |      |            |      |      |      |
| London Euston - Birmingham/Wolverhampton               | HF01 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| London Euston - North Wales                            | HF02 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| London Euston - Manchester                             | HF03 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| London Euston - Liverpool                              | HF04 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| London Euston - Carlisle/Scotland                      | HF06 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Birmingham - Scotland                                  | HF08 | All Trains | 0.45 | 0.65 | 0.85 |
| <b>Arriva Trains Wales/Trenau Arriva Cymru Limited</b> |      |            |      |      |      |
| South, West & Central Wales                            | HL02 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Wales to England                                       | HL03 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |

|                                                   |      |            |      |      |      |
|---------------------------------------------------|------|------------|------|------|------|
| Cambrian                                          | HL04 | All Trains | 0.45 | 0.65 | 0.85 |
| Cardiff Valleys                                   | HL05 | Off Peak   | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Cardiff Valleys                                   | HL05 | Peak       | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Marches                                           | HL06 | All Trains | 0.45 | 0.65 | 0.85 |
| North Wales Rural                                 | HL07 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Inter Urban North Wales                           | HL08 | All Trains | 0.45 | 0.65 | 0.85 |
| <b>The Chiltern Railway Company Limited</b>       |      |            |      |      |      |
| Met                                               | HO01 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Met                                               | HO01 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Birmingham                                        | HO02 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Birmingham                                        | HO02 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Joint                                             | HO03 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Joint                                             | HO03 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Oxford                                            | HO04 | All Trains | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| <b>c2c Rail Limited</b>                           |      |            |      |      |      |
| London-Southend/Shoeburyness (HT02op)             | HT01 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| London-Southend/Shoeburyness (HT01p)              | HT01 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| <b>London &amp; South Eastern Railway Limited</b> |      |            |      |      |      |
| Kent Mainline (Off Peak)                          | HU01 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Kent Metro (Off Peak)                             | HU02 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Kent Rural                                        | HU03 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Kent Mainline (Peak)                              | HU04 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Kent Metro (Peak)                                 | HU05 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Kent High Speed (Peak)                            | HU06 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Kent High Speed (Off Peak)                        | HU07 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| <b>Southern Railway Limited</b>                   |      |            |      |      |      |
| Rural                                             | HW01 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| London - Sussex Coast (Peak)                      | HW02 | Peak       | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| London - Sussex Coast (Off Peak)                  | HW03 | Off Peak   | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |

|                                                |      |            |      |      |      |
|------------------------------------------------|------|------------|------|------|------|
| South London Lines (Off Peak)                  | HW04 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| South London Lines (Peak)                      | HW05 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Milton Keynes - East Croydon                   | HW06 | All Trains | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| London - Gatwick Airport                       | HW07 | Off Peak   | 0.4  | 0.63 | 0.85 |
| London - Gatwick Airport/Brighton              | HW07 | Peak       | 0.4  | 0.63 | 0.85 |
| <b>Stagecoach South Western Trains Limited</b> |      |            |      |      |      |
| Main Suburban                                  | HY01 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Main Suburban                                  | HY01 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| South Hampshire Locals                         | HY02 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Waterloo - West England                        | HY03 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Waterloo - West England                        | HY03 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Waterloo - Farnham / Alton                     | HY04 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Waterloo - Farnham / Alton                     | HY04 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Windsor Inners                                 | HY05 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Windsor Inners                                 | HY05 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Windsor Outers                                 | HY06 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Windsor Outers                                 | HY06 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Waterloo - Portsmouth                          | HY07 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Waterloo - Portsmouth                          | HY07 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Waterloo - Weymouth                            | HY08 | Off Peak   | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| Waterloo - Weymouth                            | HY08 | Peak       | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| <b>Hull Trains Company Limited</b>             |      |            |      |      |      |
| Kings Cross - Hull                             | PF01 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| <b>Grand Central Railway Company Limited</b>   |      |            |      |      |      |
| Kings X - Sunderland                           | EC01 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| Kings X - Bradford                             | EC02 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |
| <b>Nexus</b>                                   |      |            |      |      |      |
| Metro                                          | PG01 | All Trains | 0.55 | 0.7  | 0.85 |
| <b>Eurostar International Limited</b>          |      |            |      |      |      |
| Eurostar                                       | GA01 | All Trains | 0.5  | 0.68 | 0.85 |









Annex B to Part 3 of Schedule 4 – Lookup Table for EBM Weights

| Viable Transfer Point [VTP]     | Viable Transfer Point [VTP]     | Applicable Infrastructure Rules | Other Operating Rules                          | S4CS Code | Description of Possession Response                                                    | Comments and Other Routes to Consider | Service Group | % Applicable | FULL Bus Replacement (100%) |     |       |        | PARTIAL Bus Replacement (50% x X%) |    |       |        |          | No Bus Replacement (0%) | EBMs Total |   |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------|--------------|-----------------------------|-----|-------|--------|------------------------------------|----|-------|--------|----------|-------------------------|------------|---|
|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              | From                        | To  | Miles | Trains | From                               | To | Miles | Trains | % Trains |                         |            |   |
| LN 101 Kings Cross to Doncaster |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          |                         |            |   |
| King's Cross<br><br>(KGX)       | Finsbury Park (FPK)             |                                 | If able to turn trains at Finsbury Park        | GC01      | Transfer passengers to LUL/FCC. Trains restart at Finsbury Park. No bus.              |                                       | EC01 and EC02 |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
| Finsbury Park (FPK)             | Welwyn Garden City<br><br>(WGC) |                                 | If able to turn trains at Welwyn Garden City   | GC02      | Transfer passengers to FCC services KGX - WGC. No bus.                                |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 |                                 | If unable to turn trains at Welwyn Garden City | GC03      | Transfer passengers to NXEA Cambridge services. GC train starts at Cambridge. No bus. |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 |                                 | If unable to use Cambridge                     | GC04      | Full bus King's Cross to Welwyn Garden City                                           |                                       | EC01 and EC02 |              | KGX                         | WGC | 20.25 |        |                                    |    |       |        |          |                         | 0          | 0 |
|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
| Welwyn Garden City<br><br>(WGC) | Stevenage<br><br>(SVG)          | If Langley Jn is available      |                                                | GC05      | Divert via Hertford Loop. No bus.                                                     |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 | If Langley Jn is not available  | If able to turn trains at Stevenage            | GC06      | Transfer passengers to FCC KGX - SVG. Trains restart at Stevenage. No bus.            |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
|                                 |                                 |                                 |                                                |           |                                                                                       |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        |          | 0                       | 0          |   |
| Stevenage                       | Hitchin                         |                                 | If able to turn trains at Hitchin              | GC07      | Transfer passengers to FCC KGX - HIT. Trains restart at Hitchin. No bus.              |                                       |               |              |                             |     |       |        |                                    |    |       |        | 0        | 0                       |            |   |

|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |
|----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|---------------|--|-----|-----|-------|--|--|--|--|--|--|---|---|
| (SVG)                | (HIT)                 |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              | If unable to turn trains at Hitchin                                   | GC08 | Transfer passengers to NXEA Cambridge services. GC train starts at Cambridge. No bus. |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              | If unable to use Cambridge                                            | GC09 | Full bus King's Cross to Hitchin                                                      |  | EC01 and EC02 |  | KGX | HIT | 31.75 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| Hitchin<br>(HIT)     | Biggleswade<br>(BIW)  | If Cambridge Jn is available |                                                                       | GC10 | Divert via Cambridge. No bus.                                                         |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              | If able to turn trains at Biggleswade                                 | GC11 | Transfer passengers to FCC KGX - BIW. Trains restart at Biggleswade. No bus.          |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              | If unable to turn trains at Biggleswade and Cambridge Jn is available | GC12 | Transfer passengers to NXEA Cambridge services. GC train starts at Cambridge. No bus. |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              | If unable to use Cambridge and able to turn trains at Biggleswade     | GC13 | Full bus King's Cross to Biggleswade                                                  |  | EC01 and EC02 |  | KGX | BIW | 41    |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| Biggleswade<br>(BIW) | Huntingdon<br>(HUN)   |                              |                                                                       | GC14 | Divert via Cambridge. No bus.                                                         |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| Huntingdon<br>(HUN)  | Peterborough<br>(PBO) | If Crescent Jn is available  |                                                                       | GC15 | Divert via Cambridge. No bus.                                                         |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                      |                       |                              |                                                                       |      |                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |

|                       |                   |                                                      |                                        |      |                                                                                                                                                |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|---------------|--|-----|-----|-------|--|--|--|--|--|--|---|---|
|                       |                   | If Crescent Jn is not available                      | If able to turn trains at Peterborough | GC16 | Full bus King's Cross to Peterborough and connect with GC trains at Peterborough                                                               |  | EC01 and EC02 |  | KGX | PBO | 76.25 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                       |                   |                                                      |                                        |      |                                                                                                                                                |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                       |                   |                                                      |                                        |      |                                                                                                                                                |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| Peterborough<br>(PBO) | Grantham<br>(GRA) | If Werrington Jn and Black Carr Jn are available     |                                        | GC17 | Divert via Sleaford and Lincoln. No bus.                                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                       |                   |                                                      |                                        |      |                                                                                                                                                |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                       |                   |                                                      |                                        |      |                                                                                                                                                |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                       |                   | If Werrington Jn and Black Carr Jn are not available | If able to turn trains at Grantham     | GC18 | Full bus Peterborough to Grantham. Trains restart at Grantham northbound. Passengers transferred to other operators southbound of Peterborough |  | EC01 and EC02 |  | PBO | GRA | 29.25 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                       |                   |                                                      |                                        |      |                                                                                                                                                |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| Grantham<br>(GRA)     | Newark<br>(NNG)   | If Black Carr Jn is available                        |                                        | GC19 | Divert via Sleaford and Lincoln. No bus.                                                                                                       |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                       |                   |                                                      |                                        |      |                                                                                                                                                |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                       |                   |                                                      |                                        |      |                                                                                                                                                |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                       |                   | If Black Carr Jn is not available                    | If able to turn trains at Newark       | GC20 | Full Bus Grantham to Newark. Trains restart at Newark northbound. Passengers transferred to other operators southbound of Grantham             |  | EC01 and EC02 |  | GRA | NNG | 14.5  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                       |                   |                                                      |                                        |      |                                                                                                                                                |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| Newark<br>(NNG)       | Retford<br>(RET)  | If Black Carr Jn is available                        |                                        | GC21 | Divert via Sleaford and Lincoln (via Arlington Jn). No bus.                                                                                    |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                       |                   |                                                      |                                        |      |                                                                                                                                                |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                       |                   |                                                      |                                        |      |                                                                                                                                                |  |               |  |     |     |       |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |

|                                            |                            |                                   |                                                  |      |                                                                                                                                        |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|---------------|--|-----|-----|------|--|--|--|--|--|--|---|---|
|                                            |                            | If Black Carr Jn is not available | If able to turn trains at Retford                | GC22 | Full bus Newark to Retford. Trains restart at Retford northbound. Passengers transferred to other operator southbound of Newark.       |  | EC01 and EC02 |  | NNG | RET | 18.5 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                            |                            |                                   |                                                  |      |                                                                                                                                        |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                            |                            |                                   |                                                  |      |                                                                                                                                        |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| Retford<br><br>(RET)                       | Doncaster<br><br>(DON)     | If Black Carr Jn is available     |                                                  | GC23 | Divert via Sleaford and Lincoln (via Arlington Jn). No bus.                                                                            |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                            |                            |                                   |                                                  |      |                                                                                                                                        |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                            |                            |                                   |                                                  |      |                                                                                                                                        |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                            |                            | If Black Carr Jn is not available | If able to turn trains at Doncaster              | GC24 | Full bus Retford to Doncaster. Trains restart at Doncaster northbound. Passengers transferred to other operator southbound of Retford. |  | EC01 and EC02 |  | RET | DON | 17.5 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                            |                            |                                   |                                                  |      |                                                                                                                                        |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                            |                            |                                   |                                                  |      |                                                                                                                                        |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| LN101/LN 600<br>Doncaster to Northallerton |                            |                                   |                                                  |      |                                                                                                                                        |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  |   |   |
| Doncaster<br><br>(DON)                     | York<br><br>(YRK)          | If "S & K line" is available      |                                                  | GC25 | Divert via Church Fenton. No bus.                                                                                                      |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                            |                            |                                   |                                                  |      |                                                                                                                                        |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                            |                            |                                   |                                                  |      |                                                                                                                                        |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                            |                            | If "S & K line" is not available  | If able to turn trains at Doncaster and York     | GC26 | Full bus Doncaster to York. Trains restart either side.                                                                                |  | EC01          |  | DON | YRK | 32.5 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                            |                            |                                   |                                                  |      |                                                                                                                                        |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                            |                            |                                   |                                                  |      |                                                                                                                                        |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| York<br><br>(YRK)                          | Northallerton<br><br>(NTR) |                                   | If able to turn trains at York and Northallerton | GC27 | Transfer to other operator (York to Northallerton). Trains restart either side. No bus.                                                |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                            |                            |                                   |                                                  |      |                                                                                                                                        |  |               |  |     |     |      |  |  |  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 |

|                                         |              |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  |   |   |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|------|--|-----|-----|-------|--|-----|-----|------|--|--|---|---|
|                                         |              |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                         |              |                                 | If unable to use other operators and able to turn trains at York and Northallerton          | GC28 | Full bus York to Northallerton. Trains restart either side.                                              |  | EC01 |  | YRK | NTR | 30    |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                         |              |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                         |              |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                         |              |                                 | If unable to turn trains at Northallerton but able to turn trains at York and Eaglescliffe. | GC29 | Full bus York to Eaglescliffe. Trains restart either side.                                               |  | EC01 |  | YRK | EAG | 52.75 |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                         |              |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                         |              |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| LN626/LN627 Northallerton to Sunderland |              |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  |   |   |
| Northallerton                           | Eaglescliffe |                                 |                                                                                             | GC30 | Divert (ECML) via Darlington then to Eaglescliffe. No BUS                                                |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| (NTR)                                   | (EAG)        |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                         |              |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| Eaglescliffe                            | Hartlepool   | If Norton Jn South is available |                                                                                             | GC31 | Divert via Stillington line and ECML (Eaglescliffe - Sunderland). Partial bus Eaglescliffe - Sunderland. |  | EC01 |  |     |     |       |  | EAG | SUN | 32.5 |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| (EAG)                                   | (HPL)        |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                         |              |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                         |              |                                 |                                                                                             | GC32 | Divert via Darlington (on ECML). Partial bus Eaglescliffe - Sunderland.                                  |  | EC01 |  |     |     |       |  | EAG | SUN | 32.5 |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                         |              |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                         |              |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| Hartlepool                              | Sunderland   | If Norton Jn South is available |                                                                                             | GC33 | Divert via Stillington line and ECML (Eaglescliffe - Sunderland). Partial bus Eaglescliffe - Sunderland. |  | EC01 |  |     |     |       |  | EAG | SUN | 32.5 |  |  | 0 | 0 |
| (HPL)                                   | (SUN)        |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                         |              |                                 |                                                                                             |      |                                                                                                          |  |      |  |     |     |       |  |     |     |      |  |  | 0 | 0 |
|                                         |              |                                 |                                                                                             | GC34 | Divert via Darlington (on ECML). Partial bus Eaglescliffe - Sunderland.                                  |  | EC01 |  |     |     |       |  | EAG | SUN | 32.5 |  |  | 0 | 0 |

|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  |      |      |     |     |       |  |     |     |     |       |     |     |   |   |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|--|-------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|------|------|-----|-----|-------|--|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|-----|---|---|
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  |      |      |     |     |       |  |     |     |     |       |     | 0   | 0 |   |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  |      |      |     |     |       |  |     |     |     |       |     | 0   | 0 |   |
| LN600/894/822 Doncaster to Wakefield Kirkgate |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  |      |      |     |     |       |  |     |     |     |       |     |     |   |   |
| Doncaster (DON)                               | Wakefield Kirkgate (WKK)   | Doncaster – Leeds (LN836) available to Hare Park Jn) |  | GC 35 | Divert via Hare Park Jn. Partial bus replacement Doncaster – Pontefract Monkhill – Wakefield Kirkgate                                                      |  | EC02 | 100% |     |     |       |  |     | DON | PFM | 16.75 |     | 100 | 0 | 0 |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  | EC02 | 100% |     |     |       |  | PFM | WKK |     |       | 100 | 0   |   |   |
| Doncaster (DON)                               | Wakefield Kirkgate (WKK)   | Doncaster – Leeds (LN836) route not available        |  | GC36  | Trains terminate at Doncaster. Full bus replacement Doncaster – Bradford Interchange via Brighouse                                                         |  | EC02 | 100% | DON | PFM | 16.75 |  |     |     |     |       | 100 | 0   | 0 |   |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  | EC02 | 100% | PFM | WKK | 8.75  |  |     |     |     | 100   | 0   | 0   |   |   |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  | EC02 | 100% | WKK | BGH | 13.5  |  |     |     |     | 100   | 0   | 0   |   |   |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  | EC02 | 100% | BGH | HFX | 5.5   |  |     |     |     | 100   | 0   | 0   |   |   |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  | EC02 | 100% | HFX | BDI | 8     |  |     |     |     | 100   | 0   | 0   |   |   |
| LN854/860/859/                                |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  |      |      |     |     |       |  |     |     |     |       |     |     |   |   |
| Wakefield Kirkgate (WKK)                      | Brighouse                  |                                                      |  | GC37  | Trains diverted via Altofts Jn Leeds West Curve and New Pudsey. Partial bus replacement service Wakefield Kirkgate to Bradford Interchange via Brighouse   |  | EC02 | 100% |     |     |       |  |     | WKK | BGH | 13.5  |     | 100 | 0 | 0 |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  | EC02 | 100% |     |     |       |  |     | BGH | HFX | 5.5   |     | 100 | 0 | 0 |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  | EC02 | 100% |     |     |       |  |     | HFX | BDI | 8     |     | 100 | 0 | 0 |
| Brighouse                                     | Halifax (HFX)              |                                                      |  | GC38  | Trains diverted via Altofts Jn Leeds West Curve and New Pudsey. Partial bus replacement service Wakefield Kirkgate to Bradford Interchange via Brighouse   |  | EC02 | 100% |     |     |       |  |     | WKK | BGH | 13.5  |     | 100 | 0 | 0 |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  | EC02 | 100% |     |     |       |  |     | BGH | HFX | 5.5   |     | 100 | 0 | 0 |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  | EC02 | 100% |     |     |       |  |     | HFX | BDI | 8     |     | 100 | 0 | 0 |
| Halifax (HFX)                                 | Bradford Interchange (BDI) | Mill Lane Jn available from Bradford Interchange     |  | GC39  | Trains diverted via Altofts Jn, Leeds West Curve and New Pudsey. Partial bus replacement service Wakefield Kirkgate to Bradford Interchange via Brighouse. |  | EC02 | 100% |     |     |       |  |     | WKK | BGH | 13.5  |     | 100 | 0 | 0 |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  | EC02 | 100% |     |     |       |  |     | BGH | HFX | 5.5   |     | 100 | 0 | 0 |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  | EC02 | 100% |     |     |       |  |     | HFX | BDI | 8     |     | 100 | 0 | 0 |
| Halifax (HFX)                                 | Bradford Interchange (BDI) | Mill Lane Jn NOT available from Bradford Interchange |  | GC 40 | Trains terminate /start at Wakefield Kirkgate . Full bus replacement service between Bradford Interchange and Wakefield Kirkgate                           |  | EC02 | 100% | WKK | BGH | 13.5  |  |     |     |     |       | 100 | 0   | 0 |   |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  | EC02 | 100% | BGH | HFX | 5.5   |  |     |     |     |       | 100 | 0   | 0 |   |
|                                               |                            |                                                      |  |       |                                                                                                                                                            |  | EC02 | 100% | HFX | BDI | 8     |  |     |     |     | 100   | 0   | 0   |   |   |



Service Groups  
 GC01: Sunderland - London  
 GC02: Bradford - London



KEY

- Viable Transfer Point (VTP)
- VTP suitable for transfer to buses
- VTP suitable for transfer to other train
- VTP suitable for transfer to LUL or other Metro services

Version details  
 Version Number 4  
 24/08/08

# **Annex C to Part 3 of Schedule 4 – Payment Rate per train mile**

| <b>Service Group</b> | <b>Description</b>                         | <b>Compensation Rate</b> | <b>Total Train Cost per Mile (Pence)</b> |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| EC01                 | London King's Cross – Sunderland           | Other                    | ⌘                                        |
| EC02                 | London King's Cross – Bradford Interchange | Other                    | ⌘                                        |



#### **PART 4: NOT USED**

**PART 5: NOT USED**

## SCHEDULE 5: THE SERVICES AND THE SPECIFIED EQUIPMENT

### 1 Definitions

1.1 In this Schedule unless the context otherwise requires:

|                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>“Calling Pattern”</b>            | means a list of stations related to one or more Passenger Train Slots, at which stops are to be Scheduled in the Working Timetable;                                                                                                      |
| <b>“Clockface Departures”</b>       | means, in respect of any Service, a pattern whereby departures from the point of origin of that Service, or any specified intermediate point, are fixed at the same number or numbers of minutes past each hour;                         |
| <b>“Contingent Right”</b>           | means a right under this Schedule 5 which is not a Firm Right and which is subject to the fulfilment of all competing Exercised Firm Rights and any additional contingency specified in this Schedule 5;                                 |
| <b>“Day”</b>                        | means any period of 24 hours beginning at 0200 hours and ending immediately before the next succeeding 0200 hours, and any reference in this Schedule to any named day of the week shall be to such period commencing on that named day; |
| <b>“Exercised”</b>                  | has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code;                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>“Firm Right”</b>                 | has the meaning ascribed to it in Part D of the Network Code;                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>“Journey Time”</b>               | means the time in the Working Timetable to be taken by a Service in travelling between the specified departure point and specified destination for that Service;                                                                         |
| <b>“Journey Time Review Notice”</b> | has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 7.5;                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>“Maximum Journey Time”</b>       | means, in respect of a Passenger Train Slot, the corresponding Maximum Journey Time, if any, set out in column 4 of Table 6.1;                                                                                                           |
| <b>“Maximum Key Journey Time”</b>   | means, in respect of a Passenger Train Slot, the corresponding Maximum Key Journey Time, if any, set out in column 4 of Table 6.1;                                                                                                       |
| <b>“Modification Notice”</b>        | has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 7.10;                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>“Network Change”</b>             | has the meaning ascribed to it in Part G of the Network Code;                                                                                                                                                                            |

|                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>“Off-Peak Services”</b>               | means Services Scheduled on any part of a Weekday and Saturday which are not “Peak Services”, and “Off-Peak” shall be construed accordingly;                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>“Passenger Train Slot”</b>            | means a Train Slot intended by the Train Operator to be used for the provision of a Service;                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>“Peak Services”</b>                   | means Services Scheduled on any Weekday and Saturday between the following times:<br><br>Morning Peak – arriving London Kings Cross between 09:00 and 10:30/ departing London Kings Cross between 07:45 and 08:45; and<br><br>Evening Peak – departing and arriving London Kings Cross between 16:00 and 18:15; |
| <b>“Public Holiday”</b>                  | means any day other than Saturday or Sunday on which the banks in the City of London are not open for business;                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>“Reduced Regular Calling Pattern”</b> | has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 4.1;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>“Regular Calling Pattern”</b>         | has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 4.1;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>“Scheduled”</b>                       | means, in relation to the quantum, timing or any other characteristic of a train movement, that quantum, timing or other characteristic as included in the applicable Working Timetable;                                                                                                                        |
| <b>“Service Group”</b>                   | means any one or more (as the context may require) of the service groups described in this Schedule;                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>“Timetable Period”</b>                | means the period of time between (and including) one Timetable Change Date and (but excluding) the immediately succeeding Timetable Change Date;                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>“Timing Load”</b>                     | means, in relation to a Service, the timing reference code as defined from time to time in the Working Timetable;                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>“Train Service Code” or “TSC”</b>     | means the eight character code applied in the Performance Monitoring System and used to identify Services;                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>“Weekday”</b>                         | means any day (including, except for the purposes of paragraphs 6 and 7, a Public Holiday) which is not a Saturday or Sunday; and                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>“xx20”</b>                            | means, as an example of this notation, 20 minutes past the hour.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

- 1.2 Unless otherwise stated, where in this Schedule a period is expressed to be between two specific times that period shall be inclusive of both such times.
- 1.3 The Train Operator's rights under this Schedule as to numbers of Passenger Train Slots per Day are calculated by reference to departures from the Scheduled start point on the Day in question, notwithstanding that a Passenger Train Slot may not be Scheduled to arrive at its end point until the immediately succeeding Day.

## 2 Passenger Train Slots

*Table 2.1: Passenger Train Slots*

| 1                                                              |                     |                                                               |             |          |                                                                                                       | 2                     |              |              |                |                |              |              |                |                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| Service Group EC01 Sunderland to London King's Cross           |                     |                                                               |             |          |                                                                                                       |                       |              |              |                |                |              |              |                |                |
| Service Group EC02 Bradford Interchange to London King's Cross |                     |                                                               |             |          |                                                                                                       |                       |              |              |                |                |              |              |                |                |
| Service description                                            |                     |                                                               |             |          |                                                                                                       | Passenger Train Slots |              |              |                |                |              |              |                |                |
| From                                                           | To                  | Via                                                           | Description | TSC      | Timing Load                                                                                           | Weekday Total         | Weekday      |              |                | Saturday Total | Saturday     |              |                | Sunday         |
|                                                                |                     |                                                               |             |          |                                                                                                       |                       | Morning Peak | Evening Peak | Off-Peak times |                | Morning Peak | Evening Peak | Off-Peak times |                |
| Sunderland                                                     | London King's Cross | Hartlepool<br>Eaglescliffe<br>Northallerton<br>Thirsk<br>York | 1.1         | 21755001 | HST7-125 until the Principal Change Date in 2018;<br>Class 180 from the Principal Change Date in 2018 | 5 <sup>1</sup>        | 1            | 1            | 3              | 5 <sup>1</sup> | 1            | 1            | 3              | 4 <sup>1</sup> |

<sup>1</sup> The interval between services at the station in the column headed From shall not be less than 60 minutes. Service intervals are applicable until the Principal Change Date (PCD) in 2016 only.

<sup>2</sup> The interval between services at the station in the column headed From shall not be less than 45 minutes. Service intervals are applicable until the PCD in 2016 only.

| 1                                                              |                      |                                                               |             |          |                                                                                                    | 2                     |              |              |                |                |              |              |                |                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| Service Group EC01 Sunderland to London King's Cross           |                      |                                                               |             |          |                                                                                                    |                       |              |              |                |                |              |              |                |                |
| Service Group EC02 Bradford Interchange to London King's Cross |                      |                                                               |             |          |                                                                                                    |                       |              |              |                |                |              |              |                |                |
| Service description                                            |                      |                                                               |             |          |                                                                                                    | Passenger Train Slots |              |              |                |                |              |              |                |                |
| From                                                           | To                   | Via                                                           | Description | TSC      | Timing Load                                                                                        | Weekday Total         | Weekday      |              |                | Saturday Total | Saturday     |              |                | Sunday         |
|                                                                |                      |                                                               |             |          |                                                                                                    |                       | Morning Peak | Evening Peak | Off-Peak times |                | Morning Peak | Evening Peak | Off-Peak times |                |
| London King's Cross                                            | Sunderland           | York<br>Thirsk<br>Northallerton<br>Eaglescliffe<br>Hartlepool | 1.2         | 21755001 | HST7-125 until the Principal Change Date in 2018; Class 180 from the Principal Change Date in 2018 | 5 <sup>1</sup>        | 1            | 1            | 3              | 5 <sup>1</sup> | 1            | 1            | 3              | 4 <sup>1</sup> |
| Bradford Interchange                                           | London King's Cross  | Halifax, Brighouse, Wakefield Kirkgate,                       | 1.3         | 21756006 | Class 180                                                                                          | 4 <sup>2</sup>        | 1            | 1            | 2              | 4 <sup>1</sup> | 1            | 0            | 3              | 4 <sup>2</sup> |
| London King's Cross                                            | Bradford Interchange | Wakefield Kirkgate, Brighouse, Halifax                        | 1.4         | 21756006 | Class 180                                                                                          | 4 <sup>1</sup>        | 0            | 1            | 3              | 4 <sup>2</sup> | 0            | 1            | 3              | 4              |

### *Passenger Train Slots*

- 2.1 The Train Operator has Firm Rights to the number of Passenger Train Slots in the Working Timetable in respect of a Service Group as listed against each Service specified in Table 2.1 on the Days and within the Peak and Off-Peak times so listed using Specified Equipment that is capable of achieving the Timing Load shown. If the Train Operator makes an Access Proposal, or relies on a Rolled Over Access Proposal, to operate any of the Services specified in Table 2.1 using Specified Equipment that is not capable of achieving the Timing Load shown, then the rights will be treated as Contingent Rights for the purposes of Part D of the Network Code.
- 2.2 In order to provide for the Scheduling of part only of Passenger Train Slots specified in Table 2.1 the Train Operator has:
  - (a) Not used.
  - (b) Not used.
- 2.3 In order to provide through Services the Train Operator has:
  - (a) Not used
  - (b) Not used.



*Table 2.2: Additional Passenger Train Slots Not used*

### *Additional Passenger Train Slots*

2.4 Not used.

2.5 Not used.

### *Ancillary Movements*

2.6 The Train Operator has Firm Rights to make Ancillary Movements of Specified Equipment to the extent necessary or reasonably required to give full effect to the other Firm Rights of the Train Operator, including:

- (a) movements for the purpose of maintenance of rolling stock to and from maintenance depots;
- (b) movements for driver training purposes; and
- (c) empty stock movements.

2.7 For the purpose of paragraph 2.6, Ancillary Movements shall not include movements of rolling stock for the purpose of testing or driver training to the extent that:

- (a) the rolling stock concerned has not achieved vehicle and route acceptance necessary for its use in the carriage of passengers on the route in question; or
- (b) where the route in question is not used by the Train Operator for carriage of passengers, the rolling stock concerned has not achieved vehicle and route acceptance necessary to operate on the route without passengers on board.

### *Relief Passenger Train Slots*

2.8 The Train Operator has Contingent Rights to relief Passenger Train Slots for special or seasonal events, whenever the Train Operator believes (acting in a reasonable and proper manner) that a relief Passenger Train Slot is necessary to accommodate anticipated customer demand. These Contingent Rights are subject to:

- (a) the relief Passenger Train Slot being additional to a Service for which the Train Operator has access rights in table 2.1 or 2.2; and
- (b) each relief Passenger Train Slot being allocated the relevant Train Service Code as shown in Schedule 7, Appendix 7C.

2.9 The Train Operator shall not have any rights to operate Services on 25 and 26 December.

2.10 Services on Public Holidays will be operated as any other Weekday service.

2.11 The exercise of a Stabling right shall not count against the number of Passenger Train Slots listed in Table 2.1.

### **3 Intervals**

*Table 3.1: Service Intervals Not used*

*Table 3.1(a): Morning Peak Service Intervals Not used*

*Table 3.1(b): Evening Peak Service Intervals Not used*

*Service Intervals Not used*

3.1 Not used.

3.2 Not used.

3.3 Not used.

3.4 Not used.

## 4 Calling Patterns

Table 4.1: Calling Patterns <sup>3rd 2nd</sup>

| 1                                                                     |                      |                                                               |             |          | 2                                                                                                                                                                   | 3                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>Service Group EC01 Sunderland to London King's Cross</b>           |                      |                                                               |             |          |                                                                                                                                                                     |                     |
| <b>Service Group EC02 Bradford Interchange to London King's Cross</b> |                      |                                                               |             |          |                                                                                                                                                                     |                     |
| <b>Service description</b>                                            |                      |                                                               |             |          |                                                                                                                                                                     |                     |
| From                                                                  | To                   | Via                                                           | Description | TSC      | Regular Calling Pattern                                                                                                                                             | Additional stations |
| Sunderland                                                            | London King's Cross  | Hartlepool<br>Eaglescliffe<br>Northallerton<br>Thirsk<br>York | 1.1         | 21755001 | Hartlepool, Eaglescliffe, Northallerton, Thirsk and York                                                                                                            | None                |
| London King's Cross                                                   | Sunderland           | York<br>Thirsk<br>Northallerton<br>Eaglescliffe<br>Hartlepool | 1.2         | 21755001 | York, Thirsk, Northallerton, Eaglescliffe and Hartlepool                                                                                                            | None                |
| Bradford Interchange                                                  | London King's Cross  | Halifax, Brighouse, Wakefield Kirkgate,                       | 1.3         | 21756006 | Low Moor, Halifax, Brighouse, Mirfield, Wakefield Kirkgate, Pontefract Monkhill (not Sundays) and Doncaster                                                         | Pontefract Monkhill |
| London King's Cross                                                   | Bradford Interchange | Wakefield Kirkgate, Brighouse, Halifax                        | 1.4         | 21756006 | Doncaster, Pontefract Monkhill (up to 2 services may call on Weekdays and one may call on Saturdays), Wakefield Kirkgate, Mirfield, Brighouse, Halifax and Low Moor | Pontefract Monkhill |

### *Calling Patterns*

- 4.1 In respect of each Service specified in column 1 of Table 4.1, the Train Operator has Firm Rights to the corresponding Calling Pattern listed in column 2 of that Table (the “Regular Calling Pattern”) or any subset of the Calling Pattern (the “Reduced Regular Calling Pattern”).

### *Additional calls*

- 4.2 The Train Operator has Contingent Rights to have Scheduled, in respect of any Passenger Train Slot, calls at one or more of the stations set out opposite the Service in column 3 of Table 4.1 being stations which do not form part of the Regular Calling Pattern.

## 5 Specified Equipment

### *Specified Equipment*

5.1 In order to provide the Services specified in this Schedule 5 the Train Operator has:

(a) Firm Rights to operate the following railway vehicles:

|                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 x Class 43 locomotives plus up to 7 Mk 3 coaches until the Principal Change Date in 2018 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                |
|--------------------------------|
| Class 180 Diesel Multiple Unit |
|--------------------------------|

and

(b) Contingent Rights to operate any railway vehicles registered with Network Rail's rolling stock library,

subject to obtaining any necessary route clearance for the route in question.

For the purposes of this contract the railway vehicles specified in paragraph 5.1(a) and 5.1(b) are known as the "Specified Equipment".

### *Train length*

5.2 The Train Operator has a Firm Right to the maximum train length in metres which the Network can from time to time accommodate, subject to a right of Network Rail to vary the train length in cases where the Network cannot accommodate all Access Proposals and Rolled Over Access Proposals to operate to the maximum length.

5.3 Nothing in paragraph 5.2 precludes the operation of trains in excess of platform lengths where appropriate measures have been taken to control, so far as is reasonably practicable, any risks introduced by the use of such longer trains.

## 6 Journey Time Protection

Table 6.1: Journey Time Protection (Journey Time Protection applicable until the Principal Change Date in 2016 only)

| 1                                                                     |                     |                                                               |                    |            | 2                                    | 3                                               | 4                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Service Group EC01 Sunderland to London King's Cross</b>           |                     |                                                               |                    |            |                                      |                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Service Group EC02 Bradford Interchange to London King's Cross</b> |                     |                                                               |                    |            |                                      |                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Service description</b>                                            |                     |                                                               |                    |            |                                      |                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>From</b>                                                           | <b>To</b>           | <b>Via</b>                                                    | <b>Description</b> | <b>TSC</b> | <b>Protection Type (MJT or MKJT)</b> | <b>Days of the week</b>                         | <b>Journey Time (in minutes)</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Sunderland                                                            | London King's Cross | Hartlepool<br>Eaglescliffe<br>Northallerton<br>Thirsk<br>York | 1.1                | 21755001   | MJT                                  | Monday to Friday:<br><br>Saturday<br><br>Sunday | 1 train up to 217<br>1 train up to 223<br>1 train up to 226<br>2 trains up to 231<br><br>1 train up to 207<br>1 train up to 210<br>1 train up to 214<br>1 train up to 215<br>1 train up to 220<br><br>1 train up to 209<br>2 trains up to 215<br>1 train up to 216 |

| 1                                                                     |                     |                                                               |             |          | 2                             | 3                                               | 4                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Service Group EC01 Sunderland to London King's Cross</b>           |                     |                                                               |             |          |                               |                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Service Group EC02 Bradford Interchange to London King's Cross</b> |                     |                                                               |             |          |                               |                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Service description</b>                                            |                     |                                                               |             |          |                               |                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| From                                                                  | To                  | Via                                                           | Description | TSC      | Protection Type (MJT or MKJT) | Days of the week                                | Journey Time (in minutes)                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| London King's Cross                                                   | Sunderland          | York<br>Thirsk<br>Northallerton<br>Eaglescliffe<br>Hartlepool | 1.2         | 21755001 | MJT                           | Monday to Friday:<br><br>Saturday<br><br>Sunday | 1 train up to 213<br>1 train up to 214<br>1 train up to 216<br>2 trains up to 229<br><br>1 train up to 208<br>2 trains up to 213<br>1 train up to 216<br>1 train up to 222<br><br>1 train up to 203<br>1 train up to 211<br>2 trains up to 216 |
| Bradford Interchange                                                  | London King's Cross | Halifax, Brighouse,<br>Wakefield Kirkgate,                    | 1.3         | 21756006 | MJT                           | Monday to Friday:<br><br>Saturday<br><br>Sunday | 2 trains up to 204<br>1 train up to 206<br>1 trains up to 236<br><br>1 train up to 199<br>1 train up to 201<br>2 trains up to 206<br><br>1 train up to 165<br>2 trains up to 166<br>1 train up to 172                                          |



| 1                                                                     |                      |                                        |             |          | 2                             | 3                                               | 4                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------|-------------|----------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Service Group EC01 Sunderland to London King's Cross</b>           |                      |                                        |             |          |                               |                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Service Group EC02 Bradford Interchange to London King's Cross</b> |                      |                                        |             |          |                               |                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Service description</b>                                            |                      |                                        |             |          |                               |                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| From                                                                  | To                   | Via                                    | Description | TSC      | Protection Type (MJT or MKJT) | Days of the week                                | Journey Time (in minutes)                                                                                                                                                        |
| London King's Cross                                                   | Bradford Interchange | Wakefield Kirkgate, Brighouse, Halifax | 1.4         | 21756006 | MJT                           | Monday to Friday:<br><br>Saturday<br><br>Sunday | 1 train up to 173<br>1 train up to 175<br>2 trains up to 190<br><br>2 trains up to 173<br>2 trains up to 184<br><br>1 train up to 166<br>2 trains up to 168<br>1 train up to 187 |

### *Journey Time protection*

- 6.1 The Train Operator has Firm Rights to Maximum Journey Times or Maximum Key Journey Times under this paragraph 6 only in relation to Passenger Train Slots which are the subject of and comply with Firm Rights under paragraph 2.1 and paragraph 4.1.
- 6.2 In respect of each Service listed in column 1 of Table 6.1, the Train Operator has Firm Rights to a Journey Time, being a Maximum Journey Time or Maximum Key Journey Time as specified by MJT or MKJT respectively in column 2, on the days listed in column 3, not exceeding the Journey Time listed in column 4.
- 6.3 Journey Times specified as Maximum Journey Times shall be increased or decreased (as the case may be) by an amount equal to any:
  - (a) increase or decrease in the relevant sectional running times applicable as at the Principal Change Date in December 2013;
  - (b) increase or decrease in the relevant station dwell times applicable as at the Principal Change Date in December 2013; and
  - (c) increase or decrease in the relevant performance allowances, engineering recovery allowances or any other allowances,as such sectional running times, station dwell times or allowances are established and may change in accordance with the Applicable Engineering Access Statement and/or the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules.
- 6.4 Journey Times specified as Maximum Key Journey Times are not subject to changes to the Applicable Engineering Access Statement or the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules, otherwise than in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 7.
- 6.5 On the Principal Change Date 2016 Table 6.1 and paragraphs 6.1 to 6.5 inclusive shall be deleted and replaced with the words "Not Used."

## **7 Provisions applicable to Journey Time protection**

### *Restriction on changes to the Engineering Access Statement and Timetable Planning Rules*

7.1 In relation to the Applicable Engineering Access Statement and the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules:

- (a) subject to paragraphs 7.1(b) and 7.1(c), Network Rail shall not propose or agree to any amendments to the Applicable Engineering Access Statement or the Applicable Timetable Planning Rules which would prevent it from Scheduling a Journey Time in the Working Timetable which is equal to or less than the relevant Maximum Key Journey Time specified for every Passenger Train Slot specified in Table 6.1;
- (b) paragraph 7.1(a) shall not apply in relation to any such amendment which is proposed by the Train Operator or effected pursuant to the order of an appeal body under Part D of the Network Code or any other competent tribunal; and
- (c) Network Rail shall not be in breach of paragraph 7.1(a) to the extent that the failure to Schedule any Journey Time is the result of any Network Rail Restriction of Use, Competent Authority Restriction of Use, or Operator Restriction of Use, (as these terms are defined in or for the purposes of Part 3 of Schedule 4).

### *Network Change*

7.2 If:

- (a) in any Timetable Period, 90 per cent or more of train movements which:
  - (i) are Scheduled in that Timetable Period; and
  - (ii) are Services to which in each case a Maximum Key Journey Time applies,exceed the applicable Scheduled Journey Time; and
- (b) the failure of such train movements to achieve those Scheduled Journey Times is attributable to the condition or operation of the Network,

then a Network Change within the meaning of paragraph (iii) of the definition of Network Change shall be treated as having occurred and the provisions of Part G of the Network Code shall apply:

- (i) as if such Network Change had been proposed by Network Rail; and
- (ii) as if the revisions to Maximum Key Journey Times agreed under paragraph 7.3, or determined under paragraph 7.4, subject to any modification under paragraph 7.10, constitute the scope of the relevant Network Change,

and compensation shall be payable to the Train Operator accordingly.

#### *Agreement of revised Maximum Key Journey Time*

- 7.3 If under paragraph 7.2 a Network Change is treated as having occurred, the parties will try to agree a revised Maximum Key Journey Time for each such Maximum Key Journey Time affected by such Network Change.

#### *Referral to ADRR*

- 7.4 If the parties fail to agree such revised Maximum Key Journey Time(s) within 3 months of the request of either party for revision of the relevant Maximum Key Journey Time(s), either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR. The parties shall agree in a Procedure Agreement, as defined in the ADRR, that in performing its function the relevant ADRR Forum must have regard to the following criteria:
- (a) Maximum Key Journey Times should be as short as is compatible with the development of a safe, reliable and robust timetable; and
  - (b) any relevant criteria which may have been published by ORR.

#### *Provisions applicable to Maximum Key Journey Times and Maximum Journey Times*

- 7.5 A Journey Time Review Notice is a notice given to the parties by ORR:
- (a) requiring them to enter into negotiations in good faith to vary such Journey Times set out in Table 6.1 as are specified in the notice;
  - (b) after consultation with the parties and such other persons as it considers appropriate; and
  - (c) containing its reasons for giving it.
- 7.6 As soon as reasonably practicable after the service of a Journey Time Review Notice, the parties shall begin and in good faith diligently pursue the negotiations in question.
- 7.7 If the parties reach agreement on the variations in question, they shall send a copy of them to ORR for its consent, together with a note of the reasons for them and an explanation of how they are consistent with its statutory duties.
- 7.8 If the parties fail to reach agreement on the variations in question within 45 days of the giving of a Journey Time Review Notice, either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR. In such a case, the parties shall agree in a Procedure Agreement, as defined in the ADRR, that the relevant ADRR Forum shall reach a determination that is fair and reasonable on the basis of the following criteria:
- (i) Journey Times should be as short as is compatible with the development of a safe, reliable and robust timetable;
  - (ii) any relevant criteria which may have been published by ORR; and

- (iii) the reasons for the service of the Journey Time Review Notice given by ORR in that notice.

*Requirement for Office of Rail Regulation's consent*

7.9 Subject to paragraph 7.10, a variation:

- (a) agreed under paragraph 7.3;
- (b) agreed or determined as an outcome of a referral for resolution in accordance with the ADRR under any of the provisions of this paragraph 7; or
- (c) agreed under paragraph 7.7;

shall have effect:

- (i) only if ORR has given its consent to it; and
- (ii) from such date as is specified in that consent.

*Office of Rail Regulation's Modification Notice*

7.10 A Modification Notice is a notice given to the parties by ORR:

- (a) specifying the changes which ORR requires be made to the proposed variations which have been:
  - (i) agreed under paragraph 7.3;
  - (ii) agreed or determined as an outcome of a referral for resolution in accordance with the ADRR under any of the provisions of this paragraph 7; or
  - (iii) specified in an agreement of the kind referred to in paragraph 7.7;
- (b) after consultation with the parties, the Secretary of State and such other persons as it considers appropriate; and
- (c) containing its reasons for giving it.

7.11 If a Modification Notice is given, this contract will have effect with the variations referred to in paragraph 7.10(a) as modified in accordance with the terms of the notice.

*Office of Rail Regulation's notice for substitution of date/period*

7.12 ORR shall be entitled, by notice to the parties, to substitute for any date or period specified in paragraph 7.8, a date which is not more than 180 days later, or a period which is not more than 180 days longer, than that so specified.

*Requirements for notice under paragraph 7.12*

7.13 No notice under paragraph 7.12 may be given unless:

- (a) ORR has consulted the parties;
- (b) ORR has taken into account any representations or objections which have been made to it within such period as it has specified for the purpose; and
- (c) where the notice is given after the date or the expiry of the period to which it relates, it is given no later than 30 days after such date or expiry.

## 8 Other rights

*Table 8.1: Platform Rights Not used*

### *Platform rights*

8.1 Not used.

8.2 Not used

*Table 8.2: Connections Not used*



### *Connections*

8.3 Not used.

8.4 Not used.

*Table 8.3: Departure time ranges Not used*

*Departure time ranges*

8.5 Not used.

*Table 8.4: Stabling facilities Not used*

*Stabling facilities*

8.6 Not used.

*Table 8.5: Turnaround times Not Used*

*Turnaround times*

8.7 Not used.

*Table 8.6: Quantum of Additional Calls Not used.*



*Quantum of additional calls*

8.8 Not used.

## **SCHEDULE 6: EVENTS OF DEFAULT, SUSPENSION AND TERMINATION**

### **1 Events of Default**

#### **1.1 *Train Operator Events of Default***

The following are Train Operator Events of Default:

- (a) the Train Operator ceases to be authorised to be the operator of trains for the provision of the Services in accordance with Clause 3.2(a);
- (b) an Insolvency Event occurs in relation to the Train Operator ;
- (c)
  - (i) any breach by the Train Operator of this contract, its Safety Obligations or any of the Collateral Agreements; or
  - (ii) any event or circumstance which is reasonably likely to result in any such breach,  
which, by itself or taken together with any other such breach, event or circumstance, Network Rail reasonably considers constitutes a threat to the safe operation of any part of the Network;
- (d) any Track Charges or other amount due by the Train Operator to Network Rail under this contract remain unpaid for more than seven days after their due date;
- (e) any breach of this contract or any material breach of any of the Collateral Agreements by the Train Operator which, by itself or taken together with any other such breach, results, or is likely to result, in material financial loss to Network Rail;
- (f) any breach of this contract or any material breach of any of the Collateral Agreements by the Train Operator which, by itself or taken together with any other such breach, results, or is likely to result, in material disruption to train operations of other train operators; and
- (g) not used.

#### **1.2 *Notification***

The Train Operator shall notify Network Rail promptly on becoming aware of the occurrence of a Train Operator Event of Default.

#### **1.3 *Network Rail Events of Default***

The following are Network Rail Events of Default:

- (a) Network Rail ceases to be authorised to be the operator of that part of the Network comprising the Routes by a licence granted under section 8 of the Act unless exempt from the requirement to be so authorised under section 7 of the Act;
- (b) an Insolvency Event occurs in relation to Network Rail;
- (c)
  - (i) any breach by Network Rail of this contract, its Safety Obligations or any of the Collateral Agreements; or
  - (ii) any event or circumstance which is reasonably likely to result in any such breach,  
which, by itself or taken together with any other such breach, event or circumstance the Train Operator reasonably considers constitutes a threat to the safe operation of the Services or any Ancillary Movements; and
- (d) any breach of this contract or any material breach of any of the Collateral Agreements by Network Rail which, by itself or taken together with any other such breach, results, or is likely to result, in material financial loss to the Train Operator.

#### **1.4** *Notification*

Network Rail shall notify the Train Operator promptly on becoming aware of the occurrence of a Network Rail Event of Default.

## **2** *Suspension*

### **2.1** *Right to suspend*

- 2.1.1 Network Rail may serve a Suspension Notice where a Train Operator Event of Default has occurred and is continuing.
- 2.1.2 The Train Operator may serve a Suspension Notice where a Network Rail Event of Default has occurred and is continuing.

### **2.2** *Contents of Suspension Notice*

A Suspension Notice shall specify:

- (a) the nature of the relevant Event of Default;
- (b) the date and time at which suspension is to take effect;
- (c) in the case of a Suspension Notice served on the Train Operator, reasonable restrictions imposed while the Suspension Notice is in force on the permission to use the Routes or any parts of them or any other part of the Network;
- (d) in the case of a Suspension Notice served on Network Rail, details of any necessary suspension of the Services; and

- (e) whether the party serving the Suspension Notice reasonably considers that the Event of Default is capable of remedy, and where the Event of Default is capable of remedy:
  - (i) the steps reasonably required to remedy the Event of Default; and
  - (ii) a reasonable grace period for the defaulting party to remedy it (where the Event of Default which has occurred is a failure to pay Track Charges or other amount due, seven days shall be a reasonable grace period).

### *2.3 Effect of Suspension Notice served by Network Rail*

Where Network Rail has served a Suspension Notice on the Train Operator:

- (a) the Train Operator shall comply with any reasonable restrictions imposed on it by the Suspension Notice;
- (b) the Suspension Notice shall remain in full force and effect in accordance with its terms until it has been revoked either in whole or in part by notice from Network Rail to the Train Operator under paragraph 2.5.4;
- (c) service of the Suspension Notice shall not affect the Train Operator's continuing obligation to pay the Track Charges; and
- (d) service of the Suspension Notice shall not affect the Train Operator's Firm Rights (as defined in Schedule 5) for the purposes of Part D of the Network Code.

### *2.4 Effect of a Suspension Notice served by the Train Operator*

Where the Train Operator has served a Suspension Notice on Network Rail:

- (a) it shall have the effect of suspending the Train Operator's permission to use the Routes to provide the Services to the extent specified in the Suspension Notice;
- (b) in relation to Services suspended by the Suspension Notice, the amount of the Fixed Track Charge (as that term is defined in Schedule 7) shall be abated on a daily basis by an amount equal to the proportion of passenger vehicle miles not run on any day due to the suspension divided by the passenger vehicle miles timetabled for the Corresponding Day to that day (as that term is defined and determined under Part 3 of Schedule 4), as multiplied by the daily amount of the Fixed Track Charge (as so defined);
- (c) the Suspension Notice shall remain in full force and effect in accordance with its terms until it has been revoked either in whole or

in part by notice from the Train Operator to Network Rail under paragraph 2.5.4; and

- (d) the service of the Suspension Notice shall not affect the Train Operator's Firm Rights (as defined in Schedule 5) for the purposes of Part D of the Network Code.

## **2.5 *Suspension to be proportionate to breach***

2.5.1 A Suspension Notice served under paragraph 2.3 in respect of any of the Train Operator Events of Default specified in paragraphs (a) and (c) to (f) (inclusive) of paragraph 1.1 shall, so far as reasonably practicable, apply only to the:

- (a) railway vehicles;
- (b) Services;
- (c) Routes; and
- (d) categories of train movements or railway vehicles,  
(or (as the case may be) parts or part of them) to which the relevant Train Operator Event of Default relates.

2.5.2 A Suspension Notice served under paragraph 2.4 in respect of any of the Network Rail Events of Default specified in paragraphs 1.3(a), (c) and (d) shall, so far as reasonably practicable, apply only to the:

- (a) railway vehicles;
- (b) Services;
- (c) Routes; and
- (d) categories of train movements or railway vehicles,  
(or (as the case may be) parts or part of them) to which the relevant Network Rail Event of Default relates.

2.5.3 The party served with a Suspension Notice which specifies an Event of Default which is capable of remedy shall:

- (a) with all reasonable diligence, take such steps as are specified in the Suspension Notice to remedy the Event of Default; and
- (b) keep the party serving the Suspension Notice fully informed of the progress which is being made in remedying the Event of Default.

2.5.4 Where a party served with a Suspension Notice has complied with its obligations under paragraph 2.5.3 (whether in whole or in part) and it is reasonable for the suspension effected by the Suspension Notice to be revoked (whether in whole or in part), the party which served the Suspension Notice shall revoke the suspension to that extent. Such revocation shall be effected as soon as practicable after the remedy in

question by notice to the other party specifying the extent of the revocation and the date on which it is to have effect.

### **3 Termination**

#### **3.1 *Network Rail's right to terminate***

Network Rail may serve a Termination Notice on the Train Operator:

- (a) where the Train Operator fails to comply with any material restriction in a Suspension Notice;
- (b) where the Train Operator fails to comply with its obligations under paragraph 2.5.3;
- (c) where the Train Operator Event of Default specified in paragraph 1.1(a) has occurred and is continuing; or
- (d) where the Train Operator Event of Default specified in a Suspension Notice served by Network Rail is not capable of being remedied and three months have elapsed from the service of that Suspension Notice.

#### **3.2 *Train Operator's right to terminate***

The Train Operator may serve a Termination Notice on Network Rail:

- (a) where Network Rail fails to comply with its obligations under paragraph 2.5.3;
- (b) where the Network Rail Event of Default specified in paragraph 1.3(a) has occurred and is continuing; or
- (c) where the Network Rail Event of Default specified in a Suspension Notice served by the Train Operator is not capable of being remedied and three months have elapsed from the service of that Suspension Notice.

#### **3.3 *Contents of Termination Notice***

A Termination Notice shall specify:

- (a) the nature of the relevant Event of Default;
- (b) a date and time, which shall be reasonable in the circumstances, at which termination is to take effect; and
- (c) whether the party serving the Termination Notice reasonably considers that the Event of Default is capable of remedy, and where the relevant Event of Default is capable of remedy:
  - (i) the steps which the party serving the Termination Notice believes are reasonably required to remedy the Event of Default; and

- (ii) a reasonable grace period within which such steps may be taken (where the Event of Default is a failure of the Train Operator to pay Track Charges or other amounts due, seven days is a reasonable grace period).

### **3.4** *Effect of Termination Notice*

Where Network Rail or the Train Operator has served a Termination Notice on the other:

- (a) the service of the Termination Notice shall not affect the parties' continuing obligations under this contract up to the date of termination, which date shall be determined in accordance with paragraph 3.4(c);
- (b) the party which has served the Termination Notice shall withdraw it by notice to the other party, upon being reasonably satisfied that the relevant Event of Default has been remedied; and
- (c) this contract shall terminate on the later of:
  - (i) the date and time specified in the Termination Notice for the contract to terminate (or such later date and time as the party which served the Termination Notice notifies to the other before the date and time so specified); and
  - (ii) the date on which a copy of the Termination Notice is given to ORR.

## **4** **Consequence of termination**

### **4.1** *Directions regarding location of Specified Equipment*

Immediately before, upon or following termination or expiry of this contract, the Train Operator shall comply or procure compliance with all reasonable directions given by Network Rail concerning the location of the Specified Equipment.

### **4.2** *Failure to comply with directions*

If the Train Operator fails to comply with any directions given under paragraph 4.1, Network Rail shall be entitled to remove from the Network or Stable any Specified Equipment left on the Network or to instruct a third party to do so and any reasonable costs incurred by Network Rail in taking such steps shall be paid promptly by the Train Operator.

### **4.3** *Evidence of costs*

Network Rail shall provide such evidence of such costs as are referred to in paragraph 4.2 as the Train Operator shall reasonably request.

## **SCHEDULE 7: TRACK CHARGES AND OTHER PAYMENTS**

### **PART 1: INTERPRETATION**

#### **1 Definitions**

In Parts 1-7 inclusive, unless the context otherwise requires:

|                                               |                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>“2008 Final Determinations”</b>            | means the document entitled “Periodic Review 2008: Determination of Network Rail’s outputs and funding for 2009-14” published by ORR on 30 October 2008;       |
| <b>“2013 Final Determination”</b>             | means the document entitled “Periodic Review 2013: Final determination of Network Rail’s outputs and funding for 2014-19” published by ORR on 31 October 2013; |
| <b>“access charges review”</b>                | has the meaning ascribed to it by Schedule 4A to the Act;                                                                                                      |
| <b>“Capacity Charge”</b>                      | means a variable charge, calculated in accordance with paragraph 6 of Part 2;                                                                                  |
| <b>“Capacity Charge Wash-up”</b>              | means the charge calculated in accordance with paragraph 6.2;                                                                                                  |
| <b>“Capacity Charge Wash-up Weekday Rate”</b> | has the meaning as ascribed to it in paragraph 6.4;                                                                                                            |
| <b>“Capacity Charge Wash-up Weekend Rate”</b> | has the meaning as ascribed to it in paragraph 6.4;                                                                                                            |
| <b>“Default Charge”</b>                       | means a variable charge calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.3 of Part 2;                                                                                 |



|                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>“Default Period”</b>             | means the period from the later of:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                     | (a) the date on which the New Specified Equipment is first used on the Network by the Train Operator; or                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                     | (b) 1 April 2014,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                     | until the date on which ORR consents to or determines a supplement to the Track Usage Price List under paragraph 9.10 of Part 2 in respect of that New Specified Equipment;                                                                                                  |
| <b>“Default Rate”</b>               | means, in respect of any New Specified Equipment used on the Network by the Train Operator, the corresponding passenger default rate for that type of vehicle set out in the section of the Track Usage Price List entitled “Passenger Variable Usage Charge default rates”; |
| <b>“Default Train Consist Data”</b> | means the data listed in Appendix 7C as amended from time to time in accordance with paragraph 10.4 of Part 2;                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>“Delivery Plan”</b>              | means the document, including its supporting documentation, published by Network Rail on or about 31 March 2014 setting out its delivery plan for the period 1 April 2014 – 31 March 2019;                                                                                   |
| <b>“Efficiency Benefit Share”</b>   | means the amount determined in accordance with paragraph 5.1 of Part 2;                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>“Existing Service Codes”</b>     | means each of the following Service Coded Groups:                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                     | 21755001, 21755005 and 21756006;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

**“Initial Indexation Factor”**

is derived from the following formula:

$$IIF = \left( 1 + \frac{(RPI_{2013} - RPI_{2012})}{RPI_{2012}} \right)^2$$

where:

IIF means Initial Indexation Factor;

$RPI_{2012}$  means the RPI published or determined with respect to the month of November 2012; and

$RPI_{2013}$  means the RPI published or determined with respect to the month of November 2013;

**“List of Capacity Charge Rates”**

means the document entitled “List of Capacity Charge Rates” published by Network Rail on or about 20 December 2013 which, for the purposes of this contract, shall be deemed to incorporate any supplements to that document consented to or determined pursuant to paragraph 9.10 of Part 2 of Schedule 7 to this contract;

**“Material Alliance Agreement”**

means a legally binding agreement between:

- (a) Network Rail and the Train Operator; or
- (b) Network Rail, the Train Operator and one or more other train operators; or
- (c) Network Rail and one or more other train operators,

establishing an alliance under which the parties to such legally binding agreement agree to share risk or reward or both on a REBS Route or part thereof on which the Train Operator operates Services and which is likely to have a material direct financial impact on one or more elements of Network Rail’s costs or income included within the Route Baseline;

**“New Specified Equipment”**

means a type of railway vehicle not included in the section of the Track Usage Price List entitled “Passenger Variable Usage Charge rates”;

|                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>“Outperformance Cap”</b>    | means the maximum possible amount in pounds sterling that can be attributed to a REBS Outperformance as published by Network Rail in its Delivery Plan;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>“Outperformance Sum”</b>    | means the lower of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Outperformance Cap as indexed in accordance with paragraph 1.11 of Part 3; and</li> <li>(b) 25% of the amount in pounds sterling which ORR, in its annual efficiency and finance assessment of Network Rail, determines in respect of the REBS Outperformance;</li> </ul>                                                                         |
| <b>“Period”</b>                | has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>“REBS Outperformance”</b>   | means the situation where ORR’s annual efficiency and finance assessment of Network Rail in respect of the REBS Route in Relevant Year t has identified, in accordance with the methodology and principles set out in Chapter 19 of the 2013 Final Determination, that Network Rail’s performance has exceeded the performance set in the Route Baseline as indexed in accordance with paragraph 1.10 of Part 3;     |
| <b>“REBS Route”</b>            | means a route specified in the table in Appendix 7A for the purposes of the Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share Mechanism;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>“REBS Underperformance”</b> | means the situation where ORR’s annual efficiency and finance assessment of Network Rail in respect of the REBS Route in Relevant Year t has identified, in accordance with the methodology and principles set out in Chapter 19 of the 2013 Final Determination, that Network Rail’s performance has not achieved the performance set in the Route Baseline as indexed in accordance with paragraph 1.10 of Part 3; |
| <b>“Relevant Year”</b>         | means a year commencing at 0000 hours on 1 April and ending at 2359 hours on the following 31 March; “Relevant Year t” means the Relevant Year for the purposes of which any calculation falls to be made; “Relevant Year t-1” means the Relevant Year preceding Relevant Year t; and similar expressions shall be construed accordingly;                                                                            |

|                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>"Route Baseline"</b>                                 | means the baseline value in respect of a REBS Route in Relevant Year t that is published by Network Rail in its Delivery Plan;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>"Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share"</b>           | has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1.1 of Part 3;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>"Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share Mechanism"</b> | means the provisions for the calculation and payment of the Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share in respect of one or more REBS Routes as described in paragraph 1 of Part 3;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>"RPI"</b>                                            | means the General Index of Retail Prices All Items measured by CHAW and published each month, or: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) if the index for any month in any year shall not have been published on or before the last day of the third month after such month, such index for such month or months as ORR may (after consultation with the parties and such other persons as it considers appropriate) determine to be appropriate in the circumstances; or</li> <li>(b) if there is a material change in the basis of the index, such other index as ORR may (after consultation with the parties and such other persons as it considers appropriate) determine to be appropriate in the circumstances;</li> </ul> |
| <b>"Service Coded Group"</b>                            | means any Service or collection of Services or Ancillary Movements operating under a service code specified in the List of Capacity Charge Rates, and any Ancillary Movements relating to such Services;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>"Track Usage Price List"</b>                         | means the document entitled "Track Usage Price List" published by Network Rail on or about 20 December 2013 which, for the purposes of this contract, shall be deemed to incorporate any supplements to that document consented to or determined pursuant to paragraph 9.10 of Part 2 of Schedule 7 to this contract;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>"Train Consist Data"</b>                             | means the information relating to the number(s) and type(s) of railway vehicle comprised in a train movement;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

|                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>“Train Mile”</b>            | in relation to a train, means a mile travelled by that train on the Network;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>“Underperformance Cap”</b>  | means the maximum possible amount in pounds sterling that can be attributed to a REBS Underperformance as published by Network Rail in its Delivery Plan;                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>“Underperformance Sum”</b>  | means the lower of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Underperformance Cap as indexed in accordance with paragraph 1.11 of Part 3; and</li> <li>(b) 10% of the amount in pounds sterling which ORR, in its annual efficiency and finance assessment of Network Rail, determines in respect of the REBS Underperformance;</li> </ul> |
| <b>“Variable Charges”</b>      | means the Capacity Charge, the Default Charge and the Variable Usage Charge;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>“Variable Usage Charge”</b> | means a variable charge, calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.1 of Part 2;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>“Vehicle Mile”</b>          | in relation to a railway vehicle, means a mile travelled by that vehicle on the Network; and                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>“Weekday”</b>               | has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 1.1 of Schedule 5.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

## PART 2: TRACK CHARGES<sup>2ND</sup>

### 1 Principal formula

During each Relevant Year, Network Rail shall levy and the Train Operator shall pay Track Charges in accordance with the following formula:

$$T_t = V_t + K_t + KW_t + D_t - BS_t$$

where:

$T_t$  means Track Charges in Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$V_t$  means an amount in respect of the Variable Usage Charge in Relevant Year  $t$  which is derived from the formula in paragraph 3.1;

$K_t$  means an amount in respect of the Capacity Charge in Relevant Year  $t$  which is derived from the formula in paragraph 6;

$KW_t$  means an amount, if any, in respect of the Capacity Charge Wash-up in Relevant Year  $t$  which shall be calculated in accordance with paragraph 6.3;

$D_t$  means an amount (if any) in respect of the Default Charge in Relevant Year  $t$  which is calculated in accordance with paragraph 3.3; and

$BS_t$  means an amount (which shall not be a negative value) in respect of the Efficiency Benefit Share in Relevant Year  $t$  which is determined in accordance with paragraph 5.1.

2 Not used.

### 3 Variable Usage Charge

#### 3.1 Variable Usage Charge

For the purposes of paragraph 1, the term  $V_t$  means an amount in respect of the Variable Usage Charge in Relevant Year  $t$  which is derived from the following formula:

$$V_t = \sum V_{it} \cdot UV_{it}$$

where:

$V_{it}$  means an amount for a type of vehicle  $i$  for Relevant Year  $t$  which is derived from the following formula:

$$V_{it} = V_{it-1} \cdot \left( 1 + \frac{(RPI_{t-1} - RPI_{t-2})}{RPI_{t-2}} \right)$$

where:

$RPI_{t-1}$  means the RPI published or determined with respect to the month of November in Relevant Year t-1;

$RPI_{t-2}$  means the RPI published or determined with respect to the month of November in Relevant Year t-2,

but so that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2014,  $V_{it}$  shall have, in respect of vehicle type i, the corresponding variable usage charge rate per Vehicle Mile for that vehicle type i set out in the Track Usage Price List; multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor; and in relation to the next following Relevant Year  $V_{it-1}$  shall have the same value;

$UV_{it}$  means the actual volume of usage (in Vehicle Miles) in Relevant Year t of vehicle type i (referred to in the Track Usage Price List) operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator; and

$\Sigma$  means the summation across all relevant categories of vehicle types i.

3.2 Not used

### 3.3 *Default Charge*

For the purposes of paragraph 1, the term  $D_t$  means the amount of Default Charge payable in respect of New Specified Equipment in Relevant Year t which is derived from the following formula:

$$D_t = \sum D_{nt} \bullet UD_{nt}$$

where:

$D_{nt}$  means the Default Rate for that New Specified Equipment for Relevant Year t which is derived from the following formula:

$$D_{nt} = D_{nt-1} \bullet \left( 1 + \frac{(RPI_{t-1} - RPI_{t-2})}{RPI_{t-2}} \right)$$

where:

$RPI_{t-1}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 3.1 above;

RPI<sub>t-2</sub> has the meaning set out in paragraph 3.1 above,

but so that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2014, D<sub>nt</sub> shall have, in respect of New Specified Equipment, the corresponding Default Rate for that New Specified Equipment, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor; and in relation to the next following Relevant Year D<sub>nt-1</sub> shall have the same value;

UD<sub>nt</sub> means the actual volume of usage of New Specified Equipment in Vehicle Miles during the Default Period in Relevant Year t operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator; and

Σ means the summation across all relevant New Specified Equipment.

#### **4 Not used.**

### **5 Efficiency benefit share**

#### **5.1 The Efficiency Benefit Share:**

- (a) is an amount (which shall not be a negative value) representing a return of Track Charges which shall be identified in the ORR's annual assessment of Network Rail as the "Efficiency Benefit Share", if any, to be rebated to the Train Operator, such amount to be determined in accordance with the methodology and principles set out in paragraphs 27.34 to 27.53 (inclusive) of the 2008 Final Determinations; and
- (b) shall only be payable in respect of Relevant Years ending on or before 31 March 2014.

#### **5.2 If, pursuant to paragraph 5.1, the Train Operator is entitled to payment of an Efficiency Benefit Share in respect of Relevant Year t, then, subject to paragraph 5.3, such payment shall be made by Network Rail to the Train Operator as a lump sum payment within 28 days after the end of the Period in which it is determined by the ORR that such payment should be made.**

#### **5.3 If, in respect of any Relevant Year t, an Efficiency Benefit Share is payable in accordance with paragraph 5.2 and this contract has either commenced or expired or otherwise been terminated during the course of that Relevant Year t, the Train Operator shall be entitled to a pro rata payment of the Efficiency Benefit Share payable in respect of that Relevant Year t. Such pro rata payment (which shall be payable in accordance with paragraph 5.2) shall be calculated as follows:**

$$\text{Pro rata BS}_t = \left( \frac{\text{EBS}}{13} \right) \times \text{CP}$$

where:

EBS means the total amount of the Efficiency Benefit Share that would have been payable to the Train Operator in respect of the whole of the



Relevant Year  $t$  in question had this contract been in force for the entire Relevant Year  $t$ ; and

CP means the number of Periods during that Relevant Year  $t$  either:

- (a) where this contract commences during the course of that Relevant Year  $t$ , following commencement of this contract; or
- (b) where this contract expires or is otherwise terminated during the course of that Relevant Year  $t$ , prior to the expiry or other termination of this contract,

provided that, in each case:

- (i) if this contract expires or is otherwise terminated on or before the fourteenth day of a Period, such Period shall not be included in the calculation of 'CP';
- (ii) if this contract expires or is otherwise terminated on or after the fifteenth day of a Period, such Period shall be included in the calculation of 'CP';
- (iii) if this contract commences on or before the fourteenth day of a Period, such Period shall be included in the calculation of 'CP'; and
- (iv) if this contract commences on or after the fifteenth day of a Period, such Period shall not be included in the calculation of 'CP'.

5.4 Without prejudice to the generality of Clause 16.3.1, any payment of an Efficiency Benefit Share (an "**EBS payment**") shall be made on the basis that it is to be treated as exclusive of VAT, so that where and to the extent that the EBS payment is consideration for a supply for VAT purposes Network Rail shall in addition pay to the Train Operator an amount equal to the amount of VAT due in respect of that EBS payment and either:

- (a) the Train Operator shall issue a VAT invoice to Network Rail in respect of the relevant amount; or
- (b) if the parties so agree and have entered into an applicable self-billing agreement (within the meaning of regulation 13(3A) of the Value Added Tax Regulations 1995 (the "**VAT Regulations**")) that continues in force then Network Rail shall produce for itself a self-billed invoice (within the meaning of regulation 13(3) of the VAT Regulations) in respect of the relevant amount.

## 6 Capacity Charge and Capacity Charge Wash-up

For the purposes of paragraph 1, the term  $K_t$  means an amount in respect of the Capacity Charge in Relevant Year  $t$  which shall be derived from the following formula:

$$K_t = \left[ \sum (Pg_{twdi} \cdot Tg_{twdi}) + (Pg_{twei} \cdot Tg_{twei}) \right]$$

where:

$\sum$  means the sum across all Service Coded Groups i;

$Pg_{twdi}$  means the Weekday rate per Service Coded Group i in respect of Relevant Year t shown in the List of Capacity Charge Rates and indexed in accordance with the following formula:

$$Pg_{twdi} = Pg_{t-1wdi} \cdot \left( 1 + \frac{(RPI_{t-1} - RPI_{t-2})}{RPI_{t-2}} \right)$$

where:

$RPI_{t-1}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 3.1 above; and

$RPI_{t-2}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 3.1 above.

but so that in relation to the Relevant Year t commencing on 1 April 2014,  $Pg_{twdi}$  shall have the value for the Weekday rate per Service Coded Group i shown for the Train Operator in the List of Capacity Charge Rates, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor; and in relation to the next following Relevant Year,  $Pg_{t-1wdi}$  shall have the same value;

$Pg_{twei}$  means the weekend rate per Service Coded Group i in respect of Relevant Year t shown in the List of Capacity Charge Rates and indexed in accordance with the following formula:

$$Pg_{twei} = Pg_{t-1wei} \cdot \left( 1 + \frac{(RPI_{t-1} - RPI_{t-2})}{RPI_{t-2}} \right)$$

where:

$RPI_{t-1}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 3.1 above; and

$RPI_{t-2}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 3.1 above,

but so that in relation to the Relevant Year t commencing on 1 April 2014,  $Pg_{twei}$  shall have the value for the weekend rate per Service Coded Group i shown for the Train Operator in the List of Capacity

Charge Rates, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor; and in relation to the next following Relevant Year,  $Pg_{t-1wei}$  shall have the same value;

$Tg_{twdi}$  means the actual Train Miles run on Weekdays by Services or Ancillary Movements in Service Coded Group i in the Relevant Year t; and

$Tg_{twei}$  means the actual Train Miles run on weekends by Services or Ancillary Movements in Service Coded Group i in the Relevant Year t.

6.2 Within 90 days after the end of Relevant Year t, Network Rail shall calculate any Capacity Charge Wash-up for the Train Operator ( $KW_t$ ) in accordance with paragraph 6.3 and provide the Train Operator such background data and workings as may reasonably be required for a proper understanding of Network Rail's calculations. If  $KW_t$  is a positive sum then it shall be payable by the Train Operator. If  $KW_t$  is a negative sum or equal to zero then no sum shall be payable by the Train Operator or by Network Rail.

6.3  $KW_t$  is derived from the following formula:

$$KW_t = \sum KW_{te}$$

Where  $\sum$  means the summation across all the Existing Service Codes e.

6.4 For each Existing Service Code e,  $KW_{te}$  is derived from the following formula:

$$KW_{te} = (M_{te} - B_{te} - A_{te})$$

where:

$M_{te}$  means Network Rail's reasonable estimate of the aggregate revenue it would have been entitled to receive during Relevant Year t from the Capacity Charge for Services or Ancillary Movements operating under Existing Service Code e under this track access agreement if, in the calculation of the Capacity Charge under paragraph 6.1 above, the weekday rate and weekend rate for any Existing Service Code e were interpreted to mean the Capacity Charge Wash-up Weekday Rate and Capacity Charge Wash-up Weekend Rate respectively, as set out in the corresponding columns in the List of Capacity Charge Rates, and had been applied as such for all Services or Ancillary Movements relating to the Existing Service Code e that had operated on the Network during Relevant Year t;

$B_{te}$  means a baseline value in pounds for Existing Service Code e for the Train Operator ( $BV_t$ ) in Relevant Year t which shall be derived from the following formula:

$$BV_t = BV_{t-1} \cdot \left( 1 + \frac{(RPI_{t-1} - RPI_{t-2})}{RPI_{t-2}} \right)$$

where:

$RPI_{t-1}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 3.1 above; and

$RPI_{t-2}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 3.1 above.

but so that in relation to the Relevant Year  $t$  commencing on 1 April 2014,  $BV_t$ , shall be the baseline value in pounds for Existing Service Code  $e$  for the Train Operator as set out in Network Rail's List of Capacity Charge Baselines for CP5, approved or directed by ORR and published on or before 10 February 2014 multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor and in relation to the next following Relevant Year  $BV_{t-1}$  shall have the same value.

$A_{te}$  means the aggregate income which Network Rail, acting reasonably, estimates is owed to it under paragraph 6.1 of Schedule 7 of this track access agreement in respect of the Capacity Charge for all Services or Ancillary Movements relating to Existing Service Code  $e$  that have been operated on the Network during Relevant Year  $t$ ;

If  $KW_{te}$  is a negative sum, then for the purposes of paragraph 6.3 above, it shall be zero.

**7 Not used.**

**8 Not used.**

**9 Bilateral supplements to the List of Capacity Charge Rates and Track Usage Price List**

9.1 Where the Train Operator intends to use New Specified Equipment on the Network, it shall where reasonably practicable inform Network Rail in writing of the date or likely date from which it intends to do so.

9.2 Where the Train Operator uses New Specified Equipment on the Network, the Train Operator shall pay Network Rail the relevant Default Charge during the Default Period.

9.3 No supplement to the Track Usage Price List or List of Capacity Charge Rates shall have effect unless it has been:

- (a) agreed between the parties and ORR has consented to it; or
- (b) determined by ORR.

9.4 Either the Train Operator or Network Rail shall be entitled to propose that:

- (a) the Track Usage Price List be supplemented as necessary to include a new vehicle type and corresponding rate; or
- (b) the List of Capacity Charge Rates be supplemented as necessary to take account of changes in the pattern and number of Services or to include rates in respect of new Services.

9.5 Any proposal of a kind referred to in paragraph 9.4 shall be made by notice to the other party and shall be accompanied by a specification of the proposal in reasonable detail and the reasons for it. The parties shall thereafter seek to agree in good faith the necessary supplement to the list in question.

- 9.6 Either party may request from the other such information that it reasonably requires in connection with the proposal and the party from whom the information was requested shall use reasonable endeavours to provide this information promptly.
- 9.7 Where the parties agree to a supplement following a proposal under paragraph 9.4, they shall request ORR's consent to it and provide such information as ORR reasonably requires in order to decide whether to give its consent.
- 9.8 If the parties fail to reach agreement within 45 days of the date of the notice given under paragraph 9.5, at any point thereafter either party shall be entitled to refer the matter to ORR for determination.
- 9.9 Following a reference to ORR under paragraph 9.8, the parties shall, within such timescales as ORR may reasonably specify, furnish ORR with such information and evidence as ORR shall reasonably require to determine the matter. If a party fails to furnish such information and evidence within the specified timescale, ORR shall be entitled to determine the matter without that information and evidence and the party in default shall have no grounds for complaint in that respect.
- 9.10 ORR may:
- (a) consent to any supplement that is agreed by the parties and submitted to it under paragraph 9.7, or following consultation with the parties, determine that a different supplement should apply; or
  - (b) following a referral to ORR under paragraph 9.8, determine the supplement that should apply.
- 9.11 In the case of a supplement to the List of Capacity Charge Rates, the supplement shall have effect from such date as ORR shall determine by notice to the parties, provided that such date shall not be a date falling prior to 1 April 2014.
- 9.12 In the case of a supplement to the Track Usage Price List, the supplement shall have retrospective effect from the first day of the Default Period.
- 9.13 Following ORR's consent or determination under paragraph 9.10 Network Rail shall:
- (a) apply the supplement from the date in accordance with paragraph 9.11 or 9.12 above as applicable; and
  - (b) within 28 days of the date of ORR's consent or determination:
    - (i) issue any adjusting invoice or credit note to the Train Operator. In the case of a supplement to the Track Usage Price List this will reflect the difference between the amount paid by the Train Operator for the Default Charge during the Default Period and the amount that it would have paid during the Default Period in respect of the Variable Usage Charge had the supplement been

in place at the time the Train Operator first used the relevant railway vehicle on the Network; and

- (ii) publish on its website details of the supplement alongside the details of any other such supplements to which ORR has consented or determined pursuant to this or any other track access contract.

9.14 Any supplement to the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List, Track Usage Price List or List of Capacity Charge Rates which ORR has consented to or determined pursuant to a passenger track access contract previously held by the Train Operator shall also apply to this contract.

## **10 Payment of Track Charges and Other Sums Due under the Contract**

### **10.1 *Payment of Track Charges and Other Sums Due under the Contract***

- (a) Save where the contract provides otherwise, the Train Operator shall pay or procure the payment to Network Rail of:

- (i) the Variable Usage Charge;
- (ii) not used;
- (iii) the Capacity Charge;
- (iv) the Default Charge; and
- (v) any other sums which have fallen due in accordance with any provision of this contract,

attributable to any Period as invoiced by Network Rail on or after expiry of each such Period within 21 days of the invoice date or 28 days after the end of the Period, whichever is later.

- (b) Not used.

- (c) Not used.

### **10.2 *Train Consist Data***

Network Rail shall calculate the Variable Charges payable by the Train Operator in respect of each Period using the Train Consist Data supplied by the Train Operator and, to the extent such Train Consist Data is not available to Network Rail, the Default Train Consist Data.

### **10.3 *Invoices and right to object to invoices***

- (a) Network Rail will notify the Train Operator on a weekly basis of the train movements for which Default Train Consist Data has been used to establish the Variable Charges payable by the Train Operator. At either party's request, the parties shall consult with a view to substituting Train Consist Data for Default Train Consist Data but such consultation shall

not delay the issue by Network Rail of the invoice for the Variable Charges in respect of the Period concerned.

- (b) For each Period, Network Rail shall be entitled to invoice the Train Operator for Variable Charges in respect of any and all train movements operated by the Train Operator during that Period based on either:
  - (i) Train Consist Data provided by the Train Operator in respect of any train movement at or prior to the time that such train movement is completed; or
  - (ii) Train Consist Data agreed by the parties under paragraph 10.3(a) in respect of any train movement; or
  - (iii) Train Consist Data provided by the Train Operator in respect of any train movement (other than any train movement where the Specified Equipment used in operating the relevant movement is loco hauled) by the end of the day on which such train movement has been completed,or (to the extent that (i) or (ii) or (iii) above do not apply) Default Train Consist Data. Each such invoice will be payable in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 10.1.
- (c) Either party shall be entitled, at any time prior to the later of 2359 hours on the fourteenth day following the expiration of the relevant Period and seven days following receipt by the Train Operator of the relevant invoice, to notify the other that it objects to any Train Consist Data (including, where applicable, the use of Default Train Consist Data) on which the whole or any part of the Variable Charges included in the relevant invoice are based and any such notice shall specify in reasonable detail what that party believes to be the Train Consist Data for the relevant train movement(s) ("**notice of objection**"). In the absence of any notice of objection being served within such time the Train Consist Data used in the relevant invoice shall be final and binding on the parties.
- (d) The parties shall seek to agree the Train Consist Data specified in any notice of objection and any consequential financial adjustment required to the relevant invoice. If the parties are unable to agree such Train Consist Data within 14 days following receipt of a notice of objection, either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR.
- (e) Within seven days of any Train Consist Data being agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 10.3(d), Network Rail shall, if any consequential or financial adjustment of the relevant invoice is required, issue a further invoice to, or (as the case may be) a credit note in favour of, the Train Operator in the amount of the relevant adjustment. The invoice or credit note shall be payable at the same time as the invoice for Variable Charges for the relevant Period or, if issued later

than 21 days after the end of the relevant Period, within seven days after the date of its issue.

- (f) Not used.
- (g) Where, as a result of any invoice or credit note issued pursuant to paragraph 10.3, any sum of money which has been paid shall become repayable or any sum of money which has been unpaid shall become payable the party to whom such sum shall be paid shall be paid or allowed interest at the Default Interest Rate on such sum from the date when it (if repayable) was paid or the date when such sum (if payable) ought to have been paid until the date of payment or repayment.

#### **10.4 Unrepresentative Train Consist Data**

- (a) If at any time during this contract either party considers the Default Train Consist Data specified in Appendix 7C is not representative of the Train Operator's Services and in particular, but without limitation, the type(s) of railway vehicles then in use and the regular number of carriages forming part of those railway vehicles in the operation of its Services, either party shall be entitled on written notice to the other to request that the Default Train Consist Data be amended. Any such request shall specify in reasonable detail the grounds for the request and the proposed amendments to the Default Train Consist Data.
- (b) The parties shall endeavour to reach agreement on any amendments to the Default Train Consist Data within 21 days of the date of the request referred to in paragraph 10.4(a) and if the parties are unable to agree such amendments within such time period, either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR.
- (c) Upon the earlier of agreement between the parties or determination by a relevant ADRR Forum, the parties shall notify ORR of the proposed amendments to the Default Train Consist Data and, subject to ORR not objecting to the proposed amendments within 14 days (the "**14 day period**") of receipt of the notification by ORR, such amendments shall take effect from the first day of the next Period following the earlier of ORR confirming its consent to the proposed amendments and the expiry of the 14 day period. If ORR objects to the proposed amendments within the 14 day period, the parties shall endeavour to reach agreement with ORR on the appropriate amendments, if any, to the Default Train Consist Data which shall then take effect on the first day of the Period next following that in which agreement is reached.

#### **10.5 Disputed amounts repayment and interest rate**

- (a) Where a party wishes to contest any invoice issued to it under this Schedule 7 (including any invoice in respect of Track Charges) it shall, within 14 days of receipt of the invoice, notify the other party in writing of the amount which is in dispute but shall pay the full amount of the



invoice, including the disputed amount, in accordance with the terms of the invoice.

- (b) Where a party has given notice under paragraph 10.5(a) that it disputes part of any invoiced amount:
  - (i) payment of such sum shall be without prejudice to the determination of whether such sum is properly due or not; and
  - (ii) if it is subsequently determined that the disputed sum, or part of it, was not properly due the payee shall repay the disputed sum, or relevant part, to the payer together with interest (to accrue daily and be compounded monthly) at the Default Interest Rate from the date of payment until the actual date of repayment.

### **PART 3: ROUTE-LEVEL EFFICIENCY BENEFIT SHARE MECHANISM**

#### **1. Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share Mechanism**

##### *Calculation of the Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share*

- 1.1 The Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share for Relevant Year  $t$  (" $O_t$ " or " $U_t$ " as the case may be) is the amount (if any) that is payable by Network Rail to the Train Operator or by the Train Operator to Network Rail, as the case may be, in respect of a REBS Route, derived from the following formula:

- (a) in the case of a REBS Outperformance:

$$O_t = \left[ \frac{V_t + D_t}{AV_t} \right] \cdot \text{Outperformance Sum}$$

and

- (b) in the case of a REBS Underperformance:

$$U_t = \left[ \frac{V_t + D_t}{AV_t} \right] \cdot \text{Underperformance Sum}$$

where:

- $O_t$  means the amount that is payable by Network Rail to the Train Operator in respect of REBS Outperformance on the REBS Route in Relevant Year  $t$ ;
- $D_t$  means the Default Charge payable by the Train Operator in respect of the REBS Route for Relevant Year  $t$ ;
- $V_t$  means the Variable Usage Charge payable by the Train Operator in respect of the REBS Route for Relevant Year  $t$ ;
- $AV_t$  means the aggregate Variable Usage Charge and Default Charge payable by all train operators providing services for the carriage of passengers in respect of the REBS Route in Relevant Year  $t$  (and calculated by summing the values of  $V_t$  and  $D_t$  under paragraph 1 of Part 2 and the corresponding provisions of each relevant train operator's access agreement) and the aggregate amounts payable under items 1 to 4 and 9 of the variable charge payable by all train operators providing services for the carriage of freight in respect of the REBS Route in Relevant Year  $t$  (and calculated by summing items 1 to 4 and 9 of the variable charge under paragraph 2.2.1 of Schedule 7 of each relevant train operator's access agreement); and
- $U_t$  means the amount that is payable by the Train Operator to Network Rail in respect of REBS Underperformance on the REBS Route in Relevant Year  $t$ .

- 1.2 The Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share (if any) calculated under paragraph 1.1 shall be payable for each REBS Route for Relevant Year  $t$ , unless the Train Operator has exercised a right to opt out in respect of a particular REBS Route in accordance with paragraph 1.3 or 1.4. Where the Train Operator has exercised such a right, no Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share shall be payable by or to the Train Operator, in respect of that REBS Route:
- (a) for the Relevant Year in the course of which the notice referred to in paragraph 1.3 was served and all subsequent Relevant Years up to 31 March 2019; and
  - (b) where Network Rail entered into a Material Alliance Agreement during the course of Relevant Year  $t$  and the Train Operator issued an Opt-out Notice pursuant to paragraph 1.4(b) in Relevant Year  $t+1$ , in respect of any Period in Relevant Year  $t$  commencing on or after the date of the Material Alliance Agreement.

*Train Operator right to opt out of the Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share Mechanism*

- 1.3 The Train Operator may serve a notice, in the form set out in Appendix 7B, on Network Rail (and shall provide a copy to ORR) informing Network Rail that the Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share Mechanism shall not apply to the Train Operator in respect of one or more REBS Routes specified in the notice for the Relevant Year in the course of which the notice was served and all

subsequent Relevant Years up to 31 March 2019 (an "**Opt-out Notice**"). Unless paragraph 1.4 applies, an Opt-out Notice may be served only before 1 July 2014.

1.4 If any of the following circumstances apply, the Train Operator may serve an Opt-out Notice at any time until 31 March 2019:

- (a) the Train Operator commences operating on one or more REBS Routes on which it did not previously operate services, services for the carriage of passengers or freight by railway, as a result of entering into a new access agreement or otherwise. In these circumstances such Opt-out Notice may be served only in respect of the REBS Routes on which the Train Operator commences operating those services; or
- (b) Network Rail notifies ORR and the Train Operator that it has entered into an agreement which is, in its opinion, a Material Alliance Agreement and ORR confirms in writing that it agrees. In these circumstances the Opt-out Notice may only be served in respect of the REBS Route to which the Material Alliance Agreement applies.

In the circumstances described in paragraphs 1.4(a) and (b), the Opt-out Notice must be served within two months after:

- (i) the date on which the Train Operator commences operating the services described in paragraph 1.4(a); or
- (ii) the date of receipt of written confirmation from ORR under paragraph 1.4(b),

as the case may be.

1.5 Network Rail shall serve notice on ORR and the Train Operator that it has entered into an agreement which it considers to be a Material Alliance Agreement within 14 days after entering into it.

1.6 Network Rail shall provide such information, excluding information which is subject to a legally binding duty or obligation of confidentiality (whether arising under the terms of any contract or otherwise), to the Train Operator as the Train Operator may reasonably request in order to determine whether to serve an Opt-out Notice. Network Rail shall provide such information within 14 days of the request, unless not reasonably practicable to do so, in which case it shall provide the information as soon as reasonably practicable.

#### *Obligation to pay Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share*

1.7 If, pursuant to paragraph 1.1, a party is entitled to payment from the other of a Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share in Relevant Year *t*, then, subject to paragraphs 1.2 and 1.8, such payment shall be made to the party entitled to the payment by the other party as a lump sum payment within 56 days after the date of publication of ORR's annual efficiency and finance assessment of Network Rail for Relevant Year *t*.

- 1.8 If, in respect of any Relevant Year t, a Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share is payable in accordance with paragraph 1.7 and this contract has either commenced or expired or otherwise been terminated during the course of that Relevant Year t, the party entitled to payment shall be entitled to a pro rata payment of the Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share payable in respect of that REBS Route for Relevant Year t. Such pro rata payment (which shall be payable in accordance with paragraph 1.9) shall be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Pro rata REBS}_t = \left( \frac{\text{REBS}}{13} \right) \times \text{CP}$$

where:

REBS means either  $O_t$  or  $U_t$  as the case may be; and

CP means the number of Periods during that Relevant Year t either:

- (a) where this contract commences during the course of that Relevant Year t, following commencement of this contract; or
- (b) where this contract expires or is otherwise terminated during the course of that Relevant Year t, prior to the expiry or other termination of this contract,

provided that, in each case:

- (i) if this contract expires or is otherwise terminated on or before the fourteenth day of a Period, such Period shall not be included in the calculation of 'CP';
- (ii) if this contract expires or is otherwise terminated on or after the fifteenth day of a Period, such Period shall be included in the calculation of 'CP';
- (iii) if this contract commences on or before the fourteenth day of a Period, such Period shall be included in the calculation of 'CP'; and
- (iv) if this contract commences on or after the fifteenth day of a Period, such Period shall not be included in the calculation of 'CP'.

- 1.9 Without prejudice to the generality of Clause 16.3.1, any payment of a Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share (a "**REBS payment**") shall be made on the basis that it is to be treated as exclusive of VAT, so that where and to the extent that the REBS payment is consideration for a supply for VAT purposes the party making that REBS payment shall in addition pay to the party

receiving the REBS payment an amount equal to the amount of VAT due in respect of that REBS payment and either:

- (a) the party receiving the REBS Payment shall issue a VAT invoice to the party making such REBS payment in respect of the relevant amount; or
- (b) if the parties so agree and have entered into an applicable self-billing agreement (within the meaning of regulation 13(3A) of the VAT Regulations) that continues in force then the party making the REBS payment shall produce for itself a self-billed invoice (within the meaning of regulation 13(3) of the VAT Regulations) in respect of the relevant amount.

### *Route Baseline Indexation*

1.10 The indexed Route Baseline in respect of Relevant Year t shall be derived from the following formula:

$$RBI_t = \text{Route Baseline} \cdot \left( 1 + \frac{(RPI_t - RPI_{2012})}{RPI_{2012}} \right)$$

where:

- $RBI_t$  means the indexed Route Baseline in respect of Relevant Year t;
- $RPI_t$  means the RPI published or determined with respect to the month of November in Relevant Year t; and
- $RPI_{2012}$  means the RPI published or determined with respect to November 2012.

### *Outperformance Cap and Underperformance Cap Indexation*

1.11 The indexed Outperformance Cap and Underperformance Cap in respect of Relevant Year t shall be derived from the following formula:

- (a) in the case of the Outperformance Cap:

$$OCI_t = OC_t \cdot \left( 1 + \frac{(RPI_t - RPI_{2012})}{RPI_{2012}} \right)$$

(b) in the case of the Underperformance Cap:

$$UCI_t = UC_t \cdot \left( 1 + \frac{(RPI_t - RPI_{2012})}{RPI_{2012}} \right)$$

where:

$OCI_t$  means the indexed Outperformance Cap in respect of Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$OC_t$  means the Outperformance Cap in respect of Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$UCI_t$  means the indexed Underperformance Cap in respect of Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$UC_t$  means the Underperformance Cap in respect of Relevant Year  $t$ ;

$RPI_t$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 1.10 above; and

$RPI_{2012}$  has the meaning set out in paragraph 1.10 above.

### **PART 3A: NOT USED**

### **PART 4: NOT USED**

### **PART 5: ADDITIONAL CHARGES**

#### **NOT USED**

### **PART 6: SUPPLEMENTAL PROVISIONS**

Each invoice or credit note issued by Network Rail to the Train Operator shall contain or be accompanied by separate itemisation of the following charges and other information (as relevant) in respect of the period covered by the invoice or credit note:

- (a) not used;
- (b) the rate of Variable Usage Charge and any Default Charge and the relevant number of Vehicle Miles applicable to vehicles for each service so charged;

- (c) not used;
- (d) not used;
- (e) not used;
- (f) not used;
- (g) the amount of any Efficiency Benefit Share in respect of Relevant Years ending on or before 31 March 2014;
- (h) not used;
- (i) not used;
- (j) the amount of any sum  $K_t$  payable as provided in paragraph 6 of Part 2; and
- (k) in respect of any other sums which have fallen due in accordance with any provisions of this contract, separately the amount payable in respect of each head of charge.

## **PART 7: FUTURE ACCESS CHARGES REVIEWS**

### **1 General**

ORR may carry out one or more access charges reviews of all or part of this contract as follows:

- (a) an access charges review such that amendments to this contract to give effect to the conclusions of such an access charges review come into operation on and from 1 April 2019 or such later date as may be specified in that review; and
- (b) not used.

### **2 Not used.**

### **3 Interpretation**

In this Part 7, references to ORR carrying out an access charges review shall be construed as including references to its initiating implementation of that review.

## APPENDIX 7A – REBS ROUTES TABLE

| Route             | Route definition                                                        |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Anglia            | As defined in Network Rail's<br>Delivery Plan supporting<br>information |
| East Midlands     |                                                                         |
| Kent              |                                                                         |
| London North East |                                                                         |
| London North West |                                                                         |
| Scotland          |                                                                         |
| Sussex            |                                                                         |
| Wales             |                                                                         |
| Wessex            |                                                                         |
| Western           |                                                                         |



## APPENDIX 7B – ROUTE-LEVEL EFFICIENCY BENEFIT SHARE MECHANISM OPT-OUT NOTICE

[Name of train operator representative]

[Position]

Telephone: [xxx]

E-mail: [xxx]

[Date]

[Enter name of person specified in paragraph 1 of Schedule 1 to the contract]

Network Rail

Kings Place

90 York Way

London

N1 9AG

Dear [Enter name of person specified in paragraph 1 of Schedule 1 to the contract]

### Opt-out from the Route-Level Efficiency Benefit Share (REBS) Mechanism

This is an Opt-out Notice in respect of the REBS Mechanism in Schedule 7 of the track access contract between Network Rail Infrastructure Limited and [Enter train operator name here], dated [insert date of track access contract] (“the contract”).

[Enter train operator name here] hereby exercises its right to opt-out of the REBS Mechanism in respect of the REBS Routes identified in Table 1 below, pursuant to {delete as appropriate [paragraph 1.3 of Part 3 to Schedule 7] or [paragraph 1.4 of Part 3 to Schedule 7]} to the contract.

**Table 1: REBS opt-out matrix**

| Route             | Route definition                                                  | Opt-out<br>(please mark with an<br>'x') |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Anglia            | As defined in Network Rail's Delivery Plan supporting information |                                         |
| East Midlands     |                                                                   |                                         |
| Kent              |                                                                   |                                         |
| London North East |                                                                   |                                         |
| London North West |                                                                   |                                         |
| Scotland          |                                                                   |                                         |
| Sussex            |                                                                   |                                         |
| Wales             |                                                                   |                                         |
| Wessex            |                                                                   |                                         |

| <b>Route</b> | <b>Route definition</b> | <b>Opt-out<br/>(please mark with an<br/>'x')</b> |
|--------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Western      |                         |                                                  |

I have sent a copy of this notice to the Director of Railway Markets and Economics at the Office of Rail Regulation and to the Head of Regulatory Policy at Network Rail [and any other person at Network Rail entitled to a copy as set out in paragraph 1 of Schedule 1 to the contract].

Yours faithfully

**[Name of train operator representative]**

## APPENDIX 7C – DEFAULT TRAIN CONSIST DATA

| Train Service Code | Description of Journey                     | Default Train Consist Data                       |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 21755001           | London Kings Cross to Sunderland           | 2 x Class 43 locomotives plus 6 x mark 3 coaches |
| 21755005           | ECS (empty coaching stock) moves           | 2 x Class 43 locomotives plus 6 x mark 3 coaches |
| 21756006           | London Kings Cross to Bradford Interchange | 1 x Class 180                                    |

## SCHEDULE 8: PERFORMANCE REGIME

### 1 Interpretation

#### 1.1 Definitions

In this Schedule 8 and its Appendices 1 and 2, unless the context otherwise requires:

**“Applicable Timetable”** means, in respect of a day, that part of the Working Timetable in respect of that day which is required to be drawn up in accordance with Condition D2.1.1 of the Network Code as at 2200 hours on the day prior to that day, and which is applicable to the Trains;

**“Bi-annual Timetable”** means in respect of any day or any Period the Passenger Timetable commencing on either the Principal Change Date or Subsidiary Change Date (as the case may be) in which falls the last day of the Period containing that day or the last day of that Period respectively;

**“Cancelled Stop”** means in relation to a Train scheduled in the Applicable Timetable to stop to set down passengers at a Monitoring Point, the Train failing to trigger that Monitoring Point (except where the failure of the train to trigger the Monitoring Point is due to a malfunction of the Monitoring Point);

**“Cancellation Minutes”** means, in relation to a Cancelled Stop, the number of Cancellation Minutes specified in column J of Appendix 1 for the Service Group which includes that Train;

**“Cap”** means, in relation to a Monitoring Point, or a Train, the cap for the relevant Service Group in column K of Appendix 1;

**“Capped Value”** means in relation to any Service Group, the capped value (if any) specified in respect of that Service Group in Appendix 1 (as indexed in accordance with paragraph 9);

**“ETCS”** means the European Train Control System;

**“Initial Indexation Factor”** has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 7;

**“Joint Inquiry”** means a formal inquiry which is required by any of the Railway Group Standards to be held or is permitted by any of the Railway Group Standards to be held and is in fact held;

|                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>“Minutes Delay”</b>                  | means, in relation to a Train and a Recording Point, the delay at that Recording Point, calculated in accordance with paragraph 3;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>“Minutes Late”</b>                   | means, in relation to a day and a Monitoring Point, the lateness at that Monitoring Point, calculated in accordance with paragraph 2;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>“Monitoring Point”</b>               | means, in relation to a direction of a Service, a point listed in column N of Appendix 1 as a point to be used for recording lateness of Trains in accordance with paragraph 2, and each such Monitoring Point shall be treated as a separate Monitoring Point notwithstanding that it may also be a Monitoring Point for the same Service in the opposite direction and/or for other Services; |
| <b>“Network Rail Performance Point”</b> | means, in relation to a Service Group, the Network Rail performance point specified in column B of Appendix 1;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>“Off-Peak”</b>                       | where applicable, has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 5;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>“Passenger Timetable”</b>            | means the timetable referred to within the Performance Monitoring System as the passenger timetable and which reflects the Applicable Timetable;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>“Peak”</b>                           | Where applicable, has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 5;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>“Performance Data Accuracy Code”</b> | means the version of the Performance Data Accuracy Code referred to in Part B of the Network Code;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>“Performance Monitoring System”</b>  | means the recording system which Network Rail is required to operate under Part B of the Network Code;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>“Performance Sum”</b>                | means, in relation to a Service Group, a sum of money which Network Rail or the Train Operator is liable to pay to the other under this Schedule 8, as calculated in accordance with paragraph 9 or 10, as the case may be;                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>“Period”</b>                         | means each consecutive period of 28 days during the term of this contract commencing at 0000 hours on 1 April in each year, provided that the length of the first and last such Period in any year may be varied by up to seven days on reasonable prior notice from Network Rail to the Train Operator;                                                                                        |
| <b>“Recording Point”</b>                | means a point at which Network Rail records Trains using the Performance Monitoring System;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

|                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>“Recovery Time”</b>                    | means additional time incorporated in the Applicable Timetable to allow for a Train to regain time lost during an earlier part of its journey;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>“Relevant Year”</b>                    | has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 7;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>“Restriction of Use”</b>               | has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 4;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>“RPI”</b>                              | has the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 7;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>“Season Ticket”</b>                    | means any ticket valid for unlimited travel on a Service for not less than a period of one calendar month;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>“Service Code”</b>                     | means the third, fourth and fifth digits of an eight character train service code applied in the Performance Monitoring System to Trains and used to identify them;                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>“Service Group”</b>                    | means a collection of Services contained within the service groups specified in column A of Appendix 1;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>“Train”</b>                            | means each train operating a Service which is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator pursuant to the permission to use the Routes granted under this contract; and</li> <li>(b) used to provide services for the carriage of passengers by railway,</li> </ul> but excludes any and all trains making an Ancillary Movement; and |
| <b>“Train Operator Performance Point”</b> | means, in relation to a Service Group, the Train Operator performance point specified in column F of Appendix 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

## 1.2 Interpretation

For the purposes of this Schedule 8:

- (a) a Train shall be treated as being in a Service Group for that part of its journey during which it satisfies the characteristics specified in columns A, L and N of Appendix 1 as forming a Service which is included in that Service Group;
- (b) events in respect of a Train shall be treated as occurring on the day on which the Train is scheduled in the Applicable Timetable to depart from the first point at which it is to pick up passengers; and
- (c) save as otherwise provided, each final calculation of minutes shall be accurate to three decimal places.

### 1.3 *Suspension Notices*

Wherever a Suspension Notice is in force, the effects of that Suspension Notice shall be the subject of Clause 3.6 and not of this Schedule 8. Accordingly, for the purposes of this Schedule 8:

- (a) neither Network Rail nor the Train Operator shall be allocated any responsibility for those effects; and
- (b) those effects shall not be regarded as causing any Minutes Late or Minutes Delay or Cancelled Stops.

## 2 **Calculation of Minutes Late**

The Minutes Late at a Monitoring Point on a day shall be derived from the following formula:

$$\text{Minutes Late} = \Sigma L$$

where:

L in respect of a Train is the lesser of:

- (i) the number of minutes (rounded down to the nearest whole minute) by which the time at which the Train stops at the Monitoring Point is later than the time at which that Train is scheduled in the Passenger Timetable to stop at that Monitoring Point; and

- (ii) the Cap,

provided that no regard shall be had for any Train which is not recorded as stopping at the Monitoring Point; and

$\Sigma$  is the sum across all those Trains in the relevant Service Group which are scheduled in the Passenger Timetable to stop at that Monitoring Point on that day which do so stop.

## 3 **Calculation of Minutes Delay**

The Minutes Delay in respect of a Train when it triggers a Recording Point shall be equal to:

- (a) in respect of the first Recording Point triggered by that Train on any day, the number of minutes (rounded down to the nearest whole minute) by which the time at which that Train triggers the Recording Point is later than the time at which that Train is scheduled in the Applicable Timetable to do so; and
- (b) in respect of any other Recording Point, the lesser of:
  - (i) the number of Minutes Delay in respect of that Recording Point calculated in accordance with paragraph 3(a) (as if that Recording Point were the first Recording Point triggered by that Train); and
  - (ii) the greater of  $((A_1 - A_2) + B)$  and zero

where:

- A<sub>1</sub> is the number of minutes between the time at which the Train triggers the Recording Point (rounded down to the nearest whole minute) and the time the Train last triggered a Recording Point (rounded down to the nearest whole minute);
- A<sub>2</sub> is the relevant time lapse scheduled in the Applicable Timetable between those same two Recording Points; and
- B is any Recovery Time between those Recording Points incorporated in the Applicable Timetable;

provided that:

- (1) any Minutes Delay which arise from a single incident or a series of related incidents and which are less than three minutes in aggregate shall be deemed to be zero; and
- (2) if for any Train the aggregate Minutes Delay in respect of all Recording Points caused by a single incident are in excess of the Cap specified in column K of Appendix 1 for that Service Group, then such excess shall be disregarded.

## **4 Recording of performance information**

### **4.1 *Recording of lateness, Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops***

Without prejudice to its obligations under Part B of the Network Code, Network Rail shall use the Performance Monitoring System to record for each day in respect of each Train scheduled in the Applicable Timetable:

- (a) the time at which the Train stops to set down passengers at each Monitoring Point;
- (b) each Cancelled Stop and the incident(s) causing such Cancelled Stop where the incident can be identified;
- (c) the time at which the Train triggers each Recording Point;
- (d) the Minutes Delay for that Train at each Recording Point; and
- (e) where the Minutes Delay which that Train has accrued since the last Recording Point are greater than or equal to three minutes:
  - (i) the incident(s) causing each minute of any delay included in Minutes Delay; and
  - (ii) those Minutes Delay for which Network Rail is unable to identify a cause,

The provisions of this Schedule 8, which concern the recording of train performance information or which refer to information regarding train performance, and the rights and remedies of the parties in respect of the recording of that information, shall be subject to and interpreted in accordance with the provisions of the Performance Data Accuracy Code.



#### **4.2 *Recording of allocated responsibility for Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops***

Network Rail shall for each day and for each Train scheduled in the Applicable Timetable record separately in the Performance Monitoring System those Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops caused by incidents:

- (a) for which Network Rail is allocated responsibility in accordance with paragraph 5.2;
- (b) for which the Train Operator is allocated responsibility in accordance with paragraph 5.3;
- (c) for which Network Rail and the Train Operator are allocated joint responsibility, in accordance with paragraph 5.4;
- (d) for which no cause can be identified; and
- (e) which are planned incidents in accordance with paragraph 5.7.

#### **4.3 *Failed Recording Points***

Without prejudice to its obligations under Part B of the Network Code, Network Rail shall use all reasonable endeavours:

- (a) to restore as soon as reasonably practicable any failed Recording Point; and
- (b) pending such restoration, to compile such information from manual records and other sources, including the Train Operator, and otherwise to substitute such information as is appropriate to reflect as accurately as is reasonably practicable the actual performance of the relevant Trains for the purposes of this Schedule 8.

#### **4.4 *Provision of information by Train Operator***

The Train Operator shall record and shall continue to record such information as Network Rail may reasonably require and which it is reasonable to expect the Train Operator to have or procure in connection with any Minutes Delay that may arise and shall provide such information to Network Rail promptly after such information first becomes available to the Train Operator.

Network Rail shall promptly notify the Train Operator upon Network Rail becoming aware of any failure or any likely failure to record accurately the information which it is required to record under paragraph 4.1. Any such notification shall be in sufficient detail to enable the Train Operator to institute the recording of such information in connection with the Trains for which the recording of information is subject to such failure or likely failure as the Train Operator may reasonably achieve. The Train Operator shall institute such recording as soon as it is reasonably able following receipt of the notification from Network Rail and will provide Network Rail with the resulting information no later than 1700 hours two Working Days following the day on which it was recorded.

## **5 Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops**

### **5.1 *Assessment of incidents causing Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops***

- (a) In assessing the cause of any Minutes Delay or Cancelled Stop, there shall be taken into account all incidents contributing thereto including:
  - (i) the extent to which each party has taken reasonable steps to avoid and/or mitigate the effects of the incidents; and
  - (ii) where a Restriction of Use overruns due to the start of such Restriction of Use being delayed by a late running Train, the incident(s) giving rise to that late running;
- (b) The parties shall take reasonable steps to avoid and mitigate the effects of any incidents upon the Trains and any failure to take such steps shall be regarded as a separate incident;
- (c) Network Rail shall identify:
  - (i) in respect of each incident recorded under paragraph 4.1(e)(i) as causing Minutes Delay, the extent to which that incident caused each of the Minutes Delay; and
  - (ii) in respect of each incident recorded under paragraph 4.1(b), the extent to which that incident caused the Cancelled Stop;
- (d) So far as Network Rail is reasonably able to do so, it shall identify whether responsibility for incidents causing Minutes Delay or Cancelled Stops is to be allocated to Network Rail or to the Train Operator or to them jointly in accordance with the following provisions of this paragraph 5.

### **5.2 *Network Rail responsibility incidents***

Responsibility for Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops on a day caused by incidents for which Network Rail is allocated responsibility pursuant to this paragraph 5.2 shall be allocated to Network Rail. Unless and to the extent otherwise agreed, Network Rail shall be allocated responsibility for an incident other than a planned incident (as defined in paragraph 5.7), if that incident is caused wholly or mainly:

- (a) by breach by Network Rail of any of its obligations under this contract; or
- (b) (whether or not Network Rail is at fault) by circumstances within the control of Network Rail in its capacity as operator of the Network; or
- (c) (whether or not Network Rail is at fault) by any act, omission or circumstance originating from or affecting the Network (including its operation), including, subject to paragraph 5.3(b)(i), any incident in connection with rolling stock on the Network for which any train operator other than the Train Operator would be allocated responsibility if it were the Train Operator under this contract.

### 5.3 *Train Operator responsibility incidents*

Responsibility for Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops on a day caused by incidents for which the Train Operator is allocated responsibility pursuant to this paragraph 5.3 shall be allocated to the Train Operator. Unless and to the extent otherwise agreed, the Train Operator shall be allocated responsibility for an incident other than a planned incident (as defined in paragraph 5.7) if that incident:

- (a) is caused wholly or mainly:
  - (i) by breach by the Train Operator of any of its obligations under this contract; or
  - (ii) (whether or not the Train Operator is at fault) by circumstances within the control of the Train Operator in its capacity as an operator of trains; or
  - (iii) (whether or not the Train Operator is at fault) by any act, omission or circumstance originating from or affecting rolling stock operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator (including its operation), including any such act, omission or circumstance originating in connection with or at any station (other than in connection with signalling under the control of Network Rail at that station or physical works undertaken by Network Rail at that station), any light maintenance depot or any network other than the Network; or
- (b) causes delay to:
  - (i) rolling stock operated by or on behalf of another train operator which is delayed in entering or leaving the Network due to any act, omission or circumstance originating in connection with a light maintenance depot or network other than the Network and, as a result of that delay, rolling stock operated by or on behalf of the Train Operator which is scheduled to leave or enter the Network at the connection with that light maintenance depot or other network is then delayed behind the first mentioned rolling stock; or
  - (ii) the commencement of a Train's journey, which is caused by the late running for any reason whatever of any rolling stock included in that Train when that rolling stock is operated by or on behalf of another train operator.

### 5.4 *Joint responsibility incidents*

- (a) Network Rail and the Train Operator shall be allocated joint responsibility for:
  - (i) any incident which is not a planned incident (as defined in paragraph 5.7), caused by an act, omission or circumstance originating in connection with or at a station which:
    - (1) is an act, omission or circumstance which affects the Network, or its operation, and prevents a Train entering

or passing through a station at the time it is scheduled to do so; and

- (2) prevents the access of passengers through the station to or from the Train;

and paragraphs 5.2 and 5.3 shall not apply to any such incident; or

- (ii) any identified incident in respect of which Network Rail and the Train Operator are equally responsible and for which neither Network Rail nor the Train Operator is allocated responsibility under paragraph 5.2 or 5.3.

- (b) Unless and to the extent otherwise agreed, Minutes Delay or Cancelled Stops caused by incidents for which Network Rail and the Train Operator are allocated joint responsibility pursuant to paragraph 5.4(a) shall be allocated 50% to Network Rail and 50% to the Train Operator.

#### 5.5 *Unidentified incidents: Minutes Delay*

Responsibility for Minutes Delay on any day in respect of a Service Group caused by incidents which are unidentified, as recorded under paragraph 4.2(d), shall be allocated as follows:

- (a) if there are any Minutes Delay in respect of the Service Group recorded as being caused by incidents for which Network Rail or the Train Operator are allocated responsibility:
  - (i) 50% of the unidentified Minutes Delay under paragraph 4.2(d) shall be allocated to Network Rail, the Train Operator and joint responsibility incidents *pro rata* to the aggregate Minutes Delay for that Service Group respectively recorded as being their responsibility under this paragraph 5 for that day; and
  - (ii) the balance of the Minutes Delay under paragraph 4.2(d) shall be allocated to Network Rail; and
- (b) if no Minutes Delay on that day in respect of the Service Group are recorded as being caused by incidents for which Network Rail or the Train Operator are allocated responsibility, then Network Rail and the Train Operator shall each be allocated 50% of the unidentified Minutes Delay recorded under paragraph 4.2(d).

#### 5.6 *Unidentified incidents: Cancelled Stops*

Responsibility for Cancelled Stops on a day in respect of a Service Group caused by incidents which are unidentified shall be allocated 50% to Network Rail and 50% to the Train Operator.

#### 5.7 *Planned incidents*

An incident shall be treated as a planned incident if and to the extent that:

- (a) such incident was a Restriction of Use notified in accordance with Schedule 4 by Network Rail to the Train Operator; or
- (b) there is Recovery Time in respect of that incident.

**5.8** *Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay at Service Group level: aggregate Minutes Delay*

In respect of a Service Group, the aggregate Minutes Delay on a day shall be the aggregate of all Minutes Delay recorded under paragraphs 4.2(a) to 4.2(d) in respect of all Trains in that Service Group scheduled in the Applicable Timetable.

**5.9** *Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay at Service Group level: Network Rail Minutes Delay*

In respect of a Service Group, the Minutes Delay on a day allocated to Network Rail shall be the aggregate of any Minutes Delay allocated to Network Rail under paragraph 5.2, paragraph 5.4 and paragraph 5.5.

**5.10** *Allocation of responsibility for Minutes Delay at Service Group level: Train Operator Minutes Delay*

In respect of a Service Group, the Minutes Delay on a day allocated to the Train Operator shall be the aggregate of any Minutes Delay allocated to the Train Operator under paragraph 5.3, paragraph 5.4 and paragraph 5.5.

**5.11** *Network Rail Cancelled Stops at Monitoring Point level*

In respect of a Monitoring Point, the Cancelled Stops on a day allocated to Network Rail shall be the aggregate of any Cancelled Stops allocated to Network Rail under paragraph 5.2, paragraph 5.4 and paragraph 5.6.

**5.12** *Train Operator Cancelled Stops at Monitoring Point level*

In respect of a Monitoring Point, the Cancelled Stops on a day allocated to the Train Operator shall be the aggregate of any Cancelled Stops allocated to the Train Operator under paragraph 5.3, paragraph 5.4 or paragraph 5.6.

**6** **Statement of allocated responsibility**

**6.1** *Initial statement*

For each day, Network Rail shall provide to the Train Operator as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event no later than the following Working Day:

- (a) the allocation of responsibility for incidents made by Network Rail under paragraph 5; and
- (b) a summary for each Service Group showing:

- (i) the aggregate Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops recorded under each category set out in paragraph 4.2; and
- (ii) a list of the Minutes Delay and Cancelled Stops (in each case broken down by incident) recorded as the responsibility of Network Rail and as the responsibility of the Train Operator.

## 6.2 *Further statements*

If Network Rail's nominated representative has reasonable grounds to believe that any further incident was the responsibility of the Train Operator or of Network Rail but was not shown as such in the information made available in accordance with paragraph 6.1, then Network Rail may, within seven days after the last Minutes Delay or Cancelled Stop caused by that incident, issue a notice in accordance with paragraph 15 revising the information and/or allocations of responsibility made available under paragraph 6.1.

## 6.3 *Adjustment statements*

If Condition B3.3 (adjustment to prior results) applies in respect of all or part of a Period, then Network Rail shall promptly issue to the Train Operator a statement showing the necessary adjustments (if any) to statements already issued and Performance Sums already paid in respect of the Period, and any such adjusting statement shall be treated as if it were a statement under paragraph 11.1 and, subject to paragraph 12.2, an adjusting payment shall be payable within 28 days of Network Rail's statement.

## 6.4 *Disputes about statements of allocated responsibility*

- (a) Except to the extent that it has, within two Working Days of receipt, notified Network Rail in accordance with paragraph 15 that it disputes the contents of a statement under paragraphs 6.1 or 6.2, the Train Operator shall be deemed to have agreed the contents of that statement. Any notification of a dispute shall specify the reasons for that dispute.
- (b) The parties shall attempt to resolve disputes notified in accordance with paragraph 6.4(a) as follows:
  - (i) within the next two clear Working Days after notification of any dispute, nominated representatives of the parties shall attempt to resolve that dispute; and
  - (ii) if agreement has not been reached after two clear Working Days, representatives authorised by a more senior level of management of the parties shall use all reasonable endeavours to negotiate a resolution of the dispute.
- (c) Negotiations under paragraph 6.4(b)(ii) shall continue, if necessary, until a date no earlier than five clear Working Days after the end of the Period in which the event giving rise to the dispute referred to in paragraph 6.4(a) occurred.

## **7 Allocation of Minutes Late to Network Rail**

In respect of each Monitoring Point, the Minutes Late on a day at that Monitoring Point allocated to Network Rail (MLNR) shall be calculated according to the following formulae:

if MD is greater than zero

$$MLNR = \frac{(MDNR \cdot ML)}{MD} + DMLNR$$

or if MD is equal to zero

$$MLNR = (0.5 \cdot ML) + DMLNR$$

where:

ML is the aggregate Minutes Late at that Monitoring Point on that day for all Trains in that Service Group, calculated in accordance with paragraph 2;

MD is the aggregate Minutes Delay on that day in respect of the Service Group under which that Monitoring Point is listed in column N of Appendix 1, calculated in accordance with paragraph 5.8;

MDNR is that part of such MD allocated to Network Rail in accordance with paragraph 5.9; and

DMLNR is the deemed minutes late at that Monitoring Point on that day allocated to Network Rail, derived from the following formula:

$$DMLNR = RC \cdot CM$$

where:

RC is the number of Cancelled Stops recorded at that Monitoring Point on that day for which Network Rail is allocated responsibility in accordance with paragraph 5.11; and

CM is the Cancellation Minutes for that Service Group set out in column J of Appendix 1.

## **8 Allocation of Minutes Late to the Train Operator**

In respect of each Monitoring Point, the Minutes Late at that Monitoring Point on a day allocated to the Train Operator (MLT) shall be calculated according to the following formulae:

if MD is greater than zero

$$MLT = \frac{(MDI \cdot ML)}{MD} + DMLT$$

or if MD is equal to zero

$$MLT = (0.5 \cdot ML) + DMLT$$

where:

ML is the aggregate Minutes Late at that Monitoring Point on that day for all Trains in that Service Group, calculated in accordance with paragraph 2;

MD is the aggregate Minutes Delay on that day in respect of the Service Group under which that Monitoring Point is listed in column N of Appendix 1, calculated in accordance with paragraph 5.8;

MDT is that part of such MD allocated to the Train Operator in accordance with paragraph 5.10; and

DMLT is the deemed minutes late at that Monitoring Point on that day allocated to the Train Operator, derived from the following formula:

$$DMLT = TC \cdot CM$$

where:

TC is the number of Cancelled Stops recorded at that Monitoring Point on that day for which the Train Operator is allocated responsibility in accordance with paragraph 5.12; and

CM is the Cancellation Minutes for that Service Group set out in column J of Appendix 1.

## **9 Network Rail Performance Sums**

9.1 In respect of a Service Group, the Network Rail Performance Sum (NRPS) for each Period shall be calculated according to the following formula:

$$NRPS = (NRPP - NRWAML) \cdot BF \cdot NRPR$$

where:

NRPP is the Network Rail Performance Point for that Service Group specified in column B of Appendix 1 for the year in which that Period falls;

NRWAML is the aggregate for all Monitoring Points in the Service Group of the weighted average minutes late allocated to Network Rail in accordance with the following formula:

$$NRWAML = \sum \frac{(MLNR \cdot MPW)}{SP}$$

where:

$\sum$  is the sum across all Monitoring Points in the Service Group;



MLNR is the Minutes Late allocated to Network Rail in respect of each Monitoring Point in that Period, in accordance with paragraph 7;

MPW is the weighting attributable to that Monitoring Point, as specified in column O of Appendix 1; and

SP is the aggregate number of stops to set down passengers at that Monitoring Point scheduled for the Period in the Applicable Timetable for which a stop or Cancelled Stop is recorded in accordance with paragraphs 4.1(a) and (b) except that if SP=0 for any Monitoring Point, then for that Monitoring Point it shall be deemed that  $\frac{(MLNR \cdot MPW)}{SP}$  shall equal zero;

BF is the relevant busyness factor estimated for the Period according to the following formula:

$$BF = \sum (MPW \cdot \frac{SD}{AS})$$

where:

$\sum$  is the sum across all Monitoring Points in the Service Group;

MPW is the weighting attributable to that Monitoring Point, as specified in column O of Appendix 1;

SD is the aggregate number of stops to set down passengers at that Monitoring Point scheduled in the Applicable Timetable for that Period for that Service Group; and

AS is the average number of stops per day at the Monitoring Point scheduled in the Bi-annual Timetable in respect of that Period except that if AS=0 for any Monitoring Point it shall be deemed that  $\frac{(MPW \cdot SD)}{AS}$  shall equal zero; and

NRPR is the relevant Network Rail payment rate for that Service Group specified in column E of Appendix 1 as indexed in accordance with paragraph 13,

provided that:

- (i) if a Capped Value is specified in respect of that Service Group in Appendix 1 and the value of NRPS in respect of any Period is determined in accordance with the formula set out in this paragraph to be greater than the Capped Value in respect of such Period, then the value of NRPS shall be deemed to be equal to the Capped Value in respect of such Period;

- (ii) the Capped Value shall be multiplied by the CV indexation figure for the Relevant Year;
- (iii) the CV indexation figure in Relevant Year t shall be derived from the following formula:

$$CV_t = \left( 1 + \frac{(RPI_{t-1} - RPI_{2013})}{RPI_{2013}} \right) \bullet \text{Initial Indexation Factor}$$

where:

- CV<sub>t</sub> means the CV indexation in Relevant Year t;
- RPI<sub>t-1</sub> means the RPI published or determined with respect to the month of November in Relevant Year t-1; and
- RPI<sub>2013</sub> means the RPI published or determined with respect to the month of November 2013.

- 9.2 Where NRPS is less than zero, Network Rail shall pay the amount of the NRPS to the Train Operator. Where NRPS is greater than zero, the Train Operator shall pay that amount to Network Rail.

## 10 Train Operator Performance Sums

- 10.1 In respect of a Service Group, the Train Operator Performance Sum (TPS) for each Period shall be calculated according to the following formula:

$$TPS = (TPP - TWAML) \bullet BF \bullet TPR$$

where:

- TPP is the Train Operator Performance Point for the Service Group specified in column F of Appendix 1;
- TWAML is the aggregate for all Monitoring Points in the Service Group of the weighted average minutes late allocated to the Train Operator in accordance with the following formula:

$$TWAML = \sum \frac{(MLT \bullet MPW)}{SP}$$

where:

$\sum$  is the sum across all Monitoring Points in the Service Group;

MLT is the Minutes Late allocated to the Train Operator in respect of each Monitoring Point in that Period, in accordance with paragraph 8;

MPW is the weighting attributable to that Monitoring Point, as specified in column O of Appendix 1; and

SP is the aggregate number of stops to set down passengers at that Monitoring Point scheduled for the Period in the Applicable Timetable for which a stop or Cancelled Stop is recorded in accordance with paragraphs 4.1(a) and (b) except that if SP=0 for any Monitoring Point, then for that Monitoring Point it shall be deemed that  $\frac{(MLT \cdot MPW)}{SP}$  shall equal zero;

BF is the relevant busyness factor estimated for the Period according to the following formula:

$$BF = \frac{\sum(MPW \cdot SD)}{AS}$$

where:

$\sum$  is the sum across all Monitoring Points in the Service Group;

MPW is the weighting attributable to that Monitoring Point, as specified in column O of Appendix 1;

SD is the aggregate number of stops to set down passengers at the Monitoring Point scheduled in the Applicable Timetable for that Period for that Service Group; and

AS is the average number of stops per day at the Monitoring Point scheduled in the Bi-annual Timetable in respect of that Period except that if AS=0 for any Monitoring Point it shall be deemed that  $\frac{(MPW \cdot SD)}{AS}$  shall equal zero; and

TPR is the relevant Train Operator payment rate for that Service Group specified in column I of Appendix 1 as indexed in accordance with the provisions in paragraph 13.

10.2 Where TPS is less than zero, the Train Operator shall pay the amount of the TPS to Network Rail. Where TPS is greater than zero, Network Rail shall pay that amount to the Train Operator.

## **11 Notification of Performance Sums**

### **11.1 Notification**

Within 14 days after the end of each Period, Network Rail shall provide the Train Operator with a statement for each Service Group for that Period showing:

(a) any Performance Sums for which Network Rail or the Train Operator is liable, together with such supporting information (other than information in respect of incidents recorded as the

responsibility of Network Rail) as the Train Operator may reasonably require; and

- (b) any matter referred to in paragraph 6.1 which the Train Operator has disputed in accordance with paragraph 6.4(a) and which is still in dispute.

## **11.2 Disputes**

Within 14 days after receipt by the Train Operator of a statement required under paragraph 11.1, the Train Operator shall notify Network Rail of any aspects of such statement which it disputes, giving reasons for each such dispute. The Train Operator shall not dispute any matter which it has agreed or deemed to have agreed under paragraph 6. Such disputes and any matter referred to in paragraph 11.1(b) shall be resolved in accordance with the procedure in paragraph 16. Save to the extent that disputes are so notified, the Train Operator shall be deemed to have agreed the contents of each statement.

## **12 Payment procedures**

### **12.1 Payments and set-off**

- (a) In respect of any and all Performance Sums for which Network Rail and the Train Operator are liable in any Period, the aggregate liabilities of Network Rail and the Train Operator shall be set off against each other. The balance shall be payable by Network Rail or the Train Operator, as the case may be, within 35 days after the end of the Period to which the payment relates.
- (b) Subject to paragraph 12.2, and save as otherwise provided, all other sums payable under this Schedule 8 shall be paid within 35 days after the end of the Period to which such payment relates.

### **12.2 Payments in the event of dispute**

Where any sum which is payable under this paragraph 12 is in dispute:

- (a) the undisputed amount shall be paid or set off (as the case may be) in accordance with paragraph 12.1;
- (b) the disputed balance (or such part of it as has been agreed or determined to be payable) shall be paid or set off (as the case may be) within 35 days after the end of the Period in which the dispute is resolved or determined; and
- (c) from the date at which such balance would but for the dispute have been due to be paid or set off, the disputed balance shall carry interest (incurred daily and compounded monthly) at the Default Interest Rate, unless the dispute relates to an incident the responsibility for which is the subject of a Joint Inquiry, in which case interest shall be payable at the prevailing base rate of Barclays Bank plc.

### **13 Payment rates**

- 13.1 Each payment rate in columns E and I of Appendix 1 shall be adjusted in respect of Periods in Relevant Year t in accordance with the following formula:

$$R_t = R_{t-1} \cdot \left( 1 + \frac{(RPI_{t-1} - RPI_{t-2})}{RPI_{t-2}} \right)$$

Where:

$R_t$  is the relevant rate in the Relevant Year t;

$R_{t-1}$  is the relevant rate in the Relevant Year t-1;

$RPI_{t-1}$  has the same meaning as set out in Paragraph 9.1 above of this Schedule 8; and

$RPI_{t-2}$  means the RPI published or determined with respect to the month of November in Relevant Year t-2,

but so that in relation to the Relevant Year commencing on 1 April 2014,  $R_t$  shall have the relevant value specified in the relevant column (either E or I) of Appendix 1, multiplied by the Initial Indexation Factor and in the next following Relevant Year,  $R_{t-1}$  shall have the same value.

### **14 Not Used**

### **15 Notices**

- 15.1 All notices under this Schedule 8 shall be given in writing and shall be sent by prepaid first class post, email or fax or delivered by hand to the party in question at the address for service last notified by that party.
- 15.2 Any such notice shall be deemed to have been duly received:
- (a) if sent by prepaid first class post, three days after posting unless otherwise proven;
  - (b) if sent by hand, when delivered;
  - (c) if sent by facsimile, (subject to confirmation of uninterrupted transmission by a transmission report) before 1700 hours on a business day, on the day of transmission and, in any other case, at 0900 hours on the next following business day ("business day" for these purposes being a day which is not a Saturday, Sunday or a public holiday in the place where the transmission is to be received); and

- (d) if sent by email, (unless a notice of non-delivery is received) upon receipt.

## **16 Disputes**

16.1 If any dispute is notified under paragraph 11.2 it shall be resolved according to the following procedure:

- (a) within seven days of service of the relevant notice (or, if the dispute relates to an incident the responsibility for which is or is to be the subject of a Joint Inquiry, within seven days of publication of the conclusion of that Joint Inquiry), the parties shall meet to discuss the disputed aspects with a view to resolving all disputes in good faith;
- (b) if, for any reason, within seven days of the meeting referred to in paragraph 16.1(a), the parties are still unable to agree any disputed aspects, each party shall promptly and in any event within seven days prepare a written summary of the disputed aspects and the reasons for each such dispute and submit such summaries to the senior officer of each party;
- (c) within 28 days of the first meeting of the parties, the senior officers of the parties shall meet with a view to resolving all disputes; and
- (d) if no resolution results before the expiry of 14 days following that meeting, then either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR.

## **17 Amendments to Appendix 1**

### *17.1 Circumstances in which parties agree to amend Appendix 1*

Either party may by notice to the other propose that Appendix 1 be amended in accordance with this paragraph 17.

### *17.2 Procedure for amendments to Appendix 1*

- (a) The party who wishes to amend Appendix 1 shall notify the other party of any such proposed change and the date from which it proposes that such change will have effect:
  - (i) where such change relates to a forthcoming timetable change, on or before the first day of the month six months before the relevant Principal Change Date or Subsidiary Change Date on which that timetable change is due to occur; and
  - (ii) in any other case, prior to the date from which it proposes such change shall have effect.
- (b) Any notice under paragraph 17.2(a) shall:
  - (i) specify as far as possible that party's proposed amendments to Appendix 1; and

- (ii) be accompanied by information and evidence in reasonable detail supporting the change proposed and setting out the reasons for it.
- (c) The party receiving a notice issued under paragraph 17.2(a) shall respond to that notice in writing, in reasonable detail and with reasons for its response, within 56 days of service of such notice.
- (d) Promptly (and in any event within 34 days) following the service of any response under paragraph 17.2(c), the parties shall endeavour to agree whether Appendix 1 should be amended in accordance with this paragraph 17 and, if so, the amendments.
- (e) If the parties fail to reach agreement within 90 days of service of a notice under paragraph 17.2(a), or if prior to that date both parties agree that agreement is unlikely to be reached within that period:
  - (i) either party may notify ORR; and
  - (ii) if ORR elects to determine the matter, the parties shall furnish ORR with such information and evidence as ORR shall require in order to determine the matter, such determination to be binding on the parties.
- (f) If ORR does not elect to determine the matter within 56 days of receipt by ORR of notification in accordance with paragraph 17.2(e)(i), either party may refer the matter for resolution in accordance with the ADRR and the parties shall agree in a Procedure Agreement (such term to have the same meaning as in the ADRR) that:
  - (i) the relevant ADRR Forum shall have regard to any relevant criteria and/or policy statement issued by ORR including in relation to the introduction of any capped value in respect of any Service Group in Appendix 1; and
  - (ii) that the relevant ADRR Forum will set out its reasoning in any determination.
- (g) An amendment to Appendix 1 shall take effect only when it has been approved by ORR under section 22 of the Act. Accordingly, as soon as reasonably practicable after any such amendment is agreed or determined in accordance with this paragraph 17 (other than a determination by ORR pursuant to paragraph 17.2(e)(ii)), the parties shall ensure that ORR is furnished with such amendment and such information and evidence as ORR requires to decide whether or not to approve the amendment.
- (h) Any amendment to Appendix 1 in connection with the proposal referred to in paragraph 17.1 which is agreed by the parties or determined by the relevant ADRR Forum, and which is approved by ORR under section 22 of the Act shall apply with effect from either:
  - (i) the relevant Principal Change Date or Subsidiary Change Date (where paragraph 17.2(a)(i) applies); or

- (ii) the date proposed by the party requesting the change (where paragraph 17.2(a)(ii) applies), unless otherwise agreed by the parties or determined by the relevant ADRR Forum in accordance with paragraph 17.2(f).
- (i) Where ORR determines the matter subject to paragraph 17.2(e)(ii), it may issue a notice to the parties setting out the amendments to be made to Appendix 1 and the date, which may be retrospective, from which they shall take effect.

### **17.3** *Adjustments to the Performance Monitoring System*

Network Rail shall make appropriate amendments to the Performance Monitoring System to reflect the amendments to Appendix 1 by the date when in accordance with paragraph 17.2 such amendments are to take effect, or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter. Where any such amendment to Appendix 1 or any consequential amendment to the Performance Monitoring System is not made until after that date, Network Rail shall, promptly following such amendments being made, issue to the Train Operator a statement showing the necessary adjustments to the statements already issued and the payments already made in respect of Performance Sums up to and including the Period commencing on the date when in accordance with paragraph 17.2 such amendments to Appendix 1 are to take effect. Any such adjusting statement shall be treated as if it were a statement under paragraph 11.1 and, subject to paragraph 12.2, an adjusting payment shall be payable within 35 days of that adjusting statement.

### **17.4** *Costs of implementing amendment*

Network Rail shall (subject to any determination of the relevant ADRR Forum as to costs, where a matter is referred to that forum under paragraph 17.2(f)) be entitled to ninety percent (90%) of costs incurred by or on behalf of Network Rail in assessing and implementing any amendments to Appendix 1 and the Performance Monitoring System, provided that those costs shall be the minimum reasonably necessary for Network Rail to assess and implement that amendment.

## **18** **ETCS Amendments**

### **18.1** *Circumstances in which ETCS Amendments can be made*

- (a) Either party may by notice to the other propose that amendments are made to this Schedule 8 (and to any other provisions of this contract as a result of those amendments) as a consequence of the introduction of ETCS on any of the Routes that the Train Operator has permission to use ("**ETCS Amendments**").
- (b) ORR may make ETCS Amendments, subject to complying with paragraph 18.3.

### **18.2** *ETCS Amendments agreed by the parties*



- (a) A party that wishes to make ETCS Amendments shall serve a notice on the other party that:
  - (i) specifies as far as possible the proposed ETCS Amendments and the date from which they are to have effect; and
  - (ii) is accompanied by information and evidence in reasonable detail supporting the proposed ETCS Amendments and setting out the reasons for making them.
- (b) The party receiving a notice under paragraph 182(a) shall respond in writing, in reasonable detail and with reasons for its response, within 30 Working Days of service of such notice.
- (c) Promptly, and in any event within 20 Working Days following service of a response pursuant to paragraph 18.2(b), the parties shall use reasonable endeavours to agree the wording of the proposed ETCS Amendments and the date on which they are to have effect.
- (d) If:
  - (i) the parties agree to make ETCS Amendments pursuant to paragraph 18.2(c); or
  - (ii) the parties fail to reach agreement within 50 Working Days of service of a notice under paragraph 18.2(a), or prior to that date the parties agree that it is unlikely that agreement will be reached within that period,

they shall notify ORR.

### **18.3 ORR right to approve, determine or make ETCS Amendments**

- (a) If ORR:
  - (i) receives a notification under paragraph 18.2(d); or
  - (ii) proposes to make ETCS Amendments itself,then in deciding whether to approve, determine or make (as the case may be) the ETCS Amendments it shall:
  - (A) give the parties and such other persons, if any, as it considers appropriate, the opportunity to make representations in relation to the proposed ETCS Amendments; and
  - (B) take into account any representations received before making its decision, such decision to specify the date on which the ETCS Amendments shall have effect.
- (b) ORR may require either party to provide such information as it may reasonably require to make a decision pursuant to paragraph 18.3(a), and such information shall be provided in accordance with any timescales and to the standard required by ORR

## Appendix 1<sup>5th</sup>

| A             | B                                                   | C            | D          | E     | F                 | G            | H          | I     | J                    | K   | L                                                     | M                                                | N                                                                                | O                              |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------|-------|-------------------|--------------|------------|-------|----------------------|-----|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Service Group | Network Rail                                        |              |            |       | TOC               |              |            |       |                      |     |                                                       |                                                  |                                                                                  |                                |
|               | Performance Point                                   | Payment Rate |            |       | Performance Point | Payment Rate |            |       | Cancellation Minutes | Cap | Service Code                                          | Direction                                        | Monitoring Point                                                                 | Weighting                      |
|               |                                                     | (Not used)   | (Not used) | Total |                   | (Not used)   | (Not used) | Total |                      |     |                                                       |                                                  |                                                                                  |                                |
| EC01          | 2014-15<br>2015-16<br>2016-17<br>2017-18<br>2018-19 |              |            | ≤     | ≤                 |              |            | ≤     | 90                   | 180 | 755 <sup>3rd</sup><br>London Kings Cross – Sunderland | Forward (southbound)<br><br>Reverse (northbound) | Hartlepool<br>York<br>London Kings Cross<br><br>York<br>Hartlepool<br>Sunderland | ×<br>×<br>×<br><br>×<br>×<br>× |

| Service Group | Network Rail                                                  |              |            |       | TOC               |              |            |       |                      |     |              |                               |                                                  |                                                                                                                      |                       |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------|-------|-------------------|--------------|------------|-------|----------------------|-----|--------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
|               | Performance Point                                             | Payment Rate |            |       | Performance Point | Payment Rate |            |       | Cancellation Minutes | Cap | Service Code |                               | Direction                                        | Monitoring Point                                                                                                     | Weighting             |
|               |                                                               | (Not used)   | (Not used) | Total |                   | (Not used)   | (Not used) | Total |                      |     |              |                               |                                                  |                                                                                                                      |                       |
| EC02          | 2014-15 ✕<br>2015-16 ✕<br>2016-17 ✕<br>2017-18 ✕<br>2018-19 ✕ |              |            | ✕     | ✕                 |              |            | ✕     | 90                   | 180 | 756          | London Kings Cross - Bradford | Forward (southbound)<br><br>Reverse (northbound) | Wakefield Kirkgate<br>Doncaster<br>London Kings Cross<br><br>Doncaster<br>Wakefield Kirkgate<br>Bradford Interchange | ✕<br>✕<br>✕<br>✕<br>✕ |

## **Appendix 2**

**Not Used**

## **SCHEDULE 9: LIMITATION ON LIABILITY**

### **1 Definitions**

In this Schedule

“Liability Cap” means:

- (a) in relation to the first Contract Year, the sum of £11,338,873; and
- (b) in relation to any subsequent Contract Year, the sum calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$C_n = C_1 * \left( \frac{RPI_n}{RPI_1} \right)$$

where:

- (i)  $C_1$  is the sum of £11,338,873;
- (ii)  $C_n$  is the Liability Cap in the nth subsequent Contract Year;
- (iii)  $RPI_n$  is the Retail Prices Index (as defined in Schedule 7) published or determined with respect to the first month of the subsequent Contract Year n; and
- (iv)  $RPI_1$  is the Retail Prices Index (as defined in Schedule 7) published or determined with respect to the month in which this contract became effective under Clause 3.1.

### **2 Application**

The limitations on liability contained in this Schedule apply in the circumstances set out in Clause 11.5.

### **3 Limitation on Network Rail’s liability**

In relation to any claim for indemnity made by the Train Operator to which this Schedule 9 applies:

- (a) Network Rail shall not be liable to make payments in relation to such claims which are admitted in writing or finally determined in any Contract Year to the extent that its liability for such claims exceeds the Liability Cap for such Contract Year; and
- (b) to the extent that its liability for such claims exceeds the Liability Cap for such Contract Year, any claim for payment of a sum which exceeds such Liability Cap shall be extinguished and Network Rail shall have no further liability for it.

#### **4 Limitation on Train Operator's liability**

In relation to any claims for indemnity made by Network Rail to which this Schedule 9 applies:

- (a) the Train Operator shall not be liable to make payments in relation to such claims which are admitted in writing or finally determined in any Contract Year to the extent that its liability for such claims exceeds the Liability Cap for such Contract Year; and
- (b) to the extent its liability for such claims exceeds the Liability Cap for such Contract Year, any claim for payment of a sum which exceeds such Liability Cap shall be extinguished and the Train Operator shall have no further liability for it.

#### **5 Disapplication of limitation**

To the extent that any Relevant Losses:

- (a) result from a conscious and intentional breach by a party; or
- (b) are in respect of obligations to compensate any person for liability for death or personal injury, whether resulting from the negligence of a party or the negligence of any of its officers, employees or agents or from a failure by a party to comply with its Safety Obligations,

such Relevant Losses:

- (i) shall not be subject to the limitation of liability in Schedule 9; and
- (ii) shall not be taken into account when calculating the amount of Relevant Losses in respect of claims admitted or finally determined in a Contract Year for the purposes of the limitations of liability in this Schedule 9.

#### **6 Exclusion of legal and other costs**

The limits on the parties' liabilities provided for in paragraphs 3 and 4 shall not apply to costs incurred in recovering any amount under a relevant claim, including legal, arbitral and other professional fees and expenses.

#### **7 Exclusion of certain Relevant Losses**

A party shall have no claim for Relevant Losses to the extent that such Relevant Losses result from its own negligence or breach of this contract.

#### **8 Continuing breaches**

Nothing in this Schedule 9 shall prevent a party making a new claim for indemnity in respect of a continuing breach of contract which:

- (a) is a continuing breach of contract which continues for more than 12 months;
- (b) is a continuing breach of contract which continues beyond a period within which it might reasonably be expected to have been remedied; or

(c) is a breach of a Performance Order in relation to a breach of contract, but any such new claim shall not include any sum which was the subject matter of a previous claim and was extinguished by virtue of paragraph 3(b) or 4(b).

## **9 Final determination of claims**

For the purpose of this Schedule 9, a determination of a claim for Relevant Losses by a Court or other tribunal shall be treated as final when there is no further right of appeal or review from such determination or in respect of which any right of appeal or review has been lost, whether by expiry of time or otherwise.

## **SCHEDULE 10: NETWORK CODE MODIFICATIONS**

### **1 Automatic effect**

#### *1.1 General*

This contract shall have effect:

- (a) with the modifications; and
- (b) from the date,

specified by ORR in a modification notice as supplemented (where appropriate) by a notice of consent to requisite adaptations or a notice of determined requisite adaptations.

#### *1.2 Retrospective effect*

No relevant notice may have retrospective effect.

### **2 Modification notice**

#### *2.1 Meaning*

A modification notice is a notice given by ORR to the parties for the purposes of this contract which modifies specified provisions of this contract (other than this Schedule 10) by making such modifications as are consequential upon, or necessary to give full effect to, any change to the Network Code.

#### *2.2 Contents of modification notice*

A modification notice shall state:

- (a) the modifications which are to be made to this contract;
- (b) the date from which specified modifications are to have effect; and, if any such modifications are to have effect from different dates, the dates applicable to each modification; and
- (c) which of the specified modifications are to be subject to adaptation and the backstop date for the requisite adaptations in question.

### **3 Adaptation procedure**

#### *3.1 Application*

This paragraph 3 applies in the case of specified modifications which are specified as being subject to adaptation.

#### *3.2 Negotiation of adaptations*

In respect of the modifications in each modification notice:



- (a) within 14 days of the date of service of the relevant modification notice, the parties shall meet and in good faith negotiate and attempt to agree the requisite adaptations;
- (b) each party shall ensure that:
  - (i) such negotiations are conducted in good faith in a timely, efficient and economical manner, with appropriate recourse to professional advice; and
  - (ii) ORR's criteria are applied in the negotiations; and
- (c) the negotiations shall not continue after the backstop date.

### *3.3 Agreed adaptations - notice to the Office of Rail Regulation*

If the parties have agreed the requisite adaptations on or before the backstop date, not later than seven days after the backstop date the agreed requisite adaptations shall be sent by the parties to ORR for its consent, together with a statement, signed by or on behalf of both parties:

- (a) stating the reasons for the agreed requisite adaptations;
- (b) stating the extent to which and ways in which ORR's criteria have been applied in arriving at the agreed requisite adaptations and, in any case where they have not been applied, the reasons; and
- (c) giving such other information as ORR may have requested.

### *3.4 Agreed adaptations – Office of Rail Regulation's consent*

If ORR is satisfied with the agreed requisite adaptations, and it gives a notice of consent to requisite adaptations, they shall have effect as provided for in paragraph 3.8.

### *3.5 Agreed requisite adaptations – Office of Rail Regulation's refusal of consent*

If ORR gives notice to the parties that it is not satisfied with any or all of the agreed requisite adaptations, it may:

- (a) require the parties again to follow the procedure for negotiating requisite adaptations (with such modifications as to time limits as it specifies), in which case they shall do so; or
- (b) determine the requisite adaptations itself.

### *3.6 Requisite adaptations - failure to agree or submit*

If the parties have failed to submit agreed requisite adaptations to ORR for its consent within seven days after the backstop date, it may determine the requisite adaptations itself.

### **3.7** *Notice of determined requisite adaptations*

A notice of determined requisite adaptations is a notice:

- (a) given by ORR to the parties for the purposes of this paragraph 3 following the failure of the parties to send to ORR within seven days of the backstop date requisite adaptations to which it gives its consent; and
- (b) which states the requisite adaptations which ORR has determined should be made using its powers to do so under paragraph 3.5 or 3.6.

### **3.8** *Effect of requisite adaptations*

Requisite adaptations established either:

- (a) by agreement of the parties and in respect of which ORR has given a notice of consent to requisite adaptations under paragraph 3.4; or
- (b) by the determination of ORR under paragraph 3.5 or 3.6 and stated in a notice of determined requisite adaptations,

shall have effect from such date as ORR states in the relevant notice of consent to requisite adaptations or (as the case may be) the relevant notice of determined requisite adaptations.

## **4** **Procedural matters**

### **4.1** *More than one notice*

More than one modification notice may be given.

### **4.2** *Differences etc as to requisite adaptations*

Any difference or question as to whether anything is a requisite adaptation shall be determined by ORR:

- (a) on the application of either party; and
- (b) in accordance with such procedure (including as to consultation) as ORR may by notice to the parties determine.

### **4.3** *Co-operation and information*

If ORR gives notice to either or both of the parties that it requires from either or both of them information in relation to any requisite adaptation or proposed requisite adaptation:

- (a) the party of whom the request is made shall provide the requested information promptly and to the standard required by ORR; and
- (b) if that party fails timeously to do so, ORR shall be entitled to proceed with its consideration of the matter in question and to reach a decision in relation to it without the information in question and the party in default shall have no grounds for complaint in that respect.

#### *4.4 Office of Rail Regulation's criteria*

In relation to the negotiation of any requisite adaptation, ORR shall be entitled to:

- (a) give to the parties any criteria which it requires to be applied in the negotiations; and
- (b) modify the criteria after consultation.

#### *4.5 Procedural modifications*

In relation to the procedure in paragraph 3 for the agreement or establishment of requisite adaptations (including the times within which any step or thing requires to be done or achieved):

- (a) such procedure may be modified by ORR by a notice of procedural modification given by it to the parties; but
- (b) ORR may give a notice of procedural modification only if it is satisfied that it is necessary or expedient to do so in order to promote or achieve the objectives specified in section 4 of the Act or if such a notice is requested by both parties.

#### *4.6 Dates*

In this Schedule 10:

- (a) where provision is made for a date to be specified or stated by ORR it may, instead of specifying or stating a date, specify or state a method by which a date is to be determined, and references to dates shall be construed accordingly; and
- (b) any notice given by ORR which states a date may state different dates for different purposes.

#### *4.7 Requirement for prior consultation*

No relevant notice shall have effect unless:

- (a) ORR has first consulted the parties in relation to the proposed relevant notice in question;
- (b) in the consultations referred to in paragraph 4.7(a), ORR has made available to the parties such drafts of the proposed relevant notice as it considers are necessary so as properly to inform them of its contents;
- (c) ORR has given each party the opportunity to make representations in relation to the proposed relevant notice and has taken into account all such representations (other than those which are frivolous or trivial) in making its decision on the relevant notice to be given;
- (d) ORR has notified the parties and the as to its conclusions in relation to the relevant notice in question (including by providing to each such

person a copy of the text of the proposed relevant notice) and its reasons for those conclusions; and

- (e) in effecting the notifications required by paragraph 4.7(d), ORR has treated as confidential any representation (including any submission of written material) which (and to the extent that) the person making the representation, by notice in writing to ORR or by endorsement on the representation of words indicating the confidential nature of such representation, has specified as confidential information.

#### 4.8 *Consolidated contract*

Not later than 28 days after the giving of the last of:

- (a) a modification notice; and
- (b) a notice of determined requisite adaptations or a notice of consent to requisite adaptations (as the case may be),

Network Rail shall prepare and send to the Train Operator and ORR a copy of this contract as so modified.

#### 4.9 *Saving*

Nothing in this Schedule 10 affects:

- (a) the right of either party to approach and obtain from ORR guidance in relation to the requisite adaptations; or
- (b) the right of ORR at any time to effect modifications to the Network Code under Condition C8 of that code.

### 5 **Definitions**

In this Schedule 10:

|                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>“backstop date”</b>                              | means the date (being not earlier than 28 days from the date of the modification notice) specified as such in a modification notice (or such later date as may be established under paragraph 3.5(a) or 4.6); |
| <b>“modification notice”</b>                        | has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.1;                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>“notice of consent to requisite adaptations”</b> | means a notice given by ORR under paragraph 3.4;                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>“notice of determined requisite adaptations”</b> | has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 3.7;                                                                                                                                                              |

|                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>“notice of procedural modification”</b> | means a notice given by ORR to the parties under paragraph 4.5 modifying any aspect of the procedure in this Schedule 10 for the agreement or establishment of requisite adaptations;                                                                                                                   |
| <b>“ORR’s criteria”</b>                    | means the criteria established by ORR for the purposes of the negotiation of requisite adaptations and given to the parties, or modified, under paragraph 4.4;                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>“relevant notice”</b>                   | means a modification notice, notice of determined requisite adaptations, notice of procedural modification or notice of modification of ORR’s criteria;                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>“requisite adaptations”</b>             | in relation to specified modifications, means the amendments (including the addition of information) to the provisions in question which are necessary or expedient so as to give full effect to them in the particular circumstances of the case, and “adaptation” shall be construed accordingly; and |
| <b>“specified”</b>                         | means specified in a modification notice.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

## **SCHEDULE 11: PROGRAMME OF WORKS SPECIFICATION**

### **Works Relating to Class 180 Units**

The Train Operator shall invest £5.2m in a full interior refresh and reconfiguration of the Class 180 fleet to be completed by 31 December 2018 including:

- installation of soft furnishings including but not limited to carpets, curtains, seat covers and arm rests;
- refinishing of interior hard surfaces including but not limited to toilets, vestibules and tables; and
- reconfiguration of catering outlets.

## **SCHEDULE 12: USE OF RAILWAYS INFRASTRUCTURE REOPENER**

### **1 Automatic effect**

#### **1.1 General**

This contract shall have effect-

(a) with the modifications; and

(b) from the date

specified by ORR in a Schedule 12 notice.

#### **1.2 Retrospective effect**

No relevant notice may have retrospective effect.

### **2 Schedule 12 notice**

#### **2.1 Meaning**

A Schedule 12 notice is a notice given by ORR to the parties for the purposes of this contract which modifies this Schedule 12 by replacing this Schedule 12 with the specified provisions arising from the requirements of paragraph 18(5) of the Railways Infrastructure (Access and Management) Regulations 2005.

#### **2.2 Contents of Schedule 12 notice**

A Schedule 12 notice shall state –

(a) the modifications which are to be made to this Schedule 12; and

(b) the date from which specified modifications are to have effect.

### **3 Definitions**

In this Schedule 12 –

**“Schedule 12 notice”** has the meaning ascribed to it in paragraph 2.1; and

**“specified”** means specified in a Schedule 12 notice.

## **SCHEDULE 13: ERTMS COMPENSATION**

### Definitions

In this Schedule 13 —

**“ERTMS”** means European Rail Traffic Management System;

**“Expert”** means a person appointed in accordance with paragraph 2 to resolve the matter of ERTMS compensation; and

**“Part G Compensation”** means Part G of the Network Code relating to compensation.

### **1. EFFECT OF THIS SCHEDULE**

- 1.1 The Part G Compensation associated with ERTMS that has not been agreed by the parties shall be suspended pending an Expert determination made in accordance with this schedule.
- 1.2 The purpose of this schedule will be to allow either party to refer the Part G Compensation in dispute, associated with the ERTMS implementation project to an Expert for his final determination.
- 1.3 Any ERTMS Part G Compensation that is agreed by the parties shall not be the subject of the Expert determination.
- 1.4 This schedule and the Expert determination shall apply only to the disputed Part G Compensation associated with the ERTMS implementation project. It shall not apply to any other disputes associated with the ERTMS Network Change / Part G.
- 1.5 The Train Operator waives the right to object to the relevant ERTMS Network Change solely in relation to Part G Compensation once this Schedule 13 has been invoked.
- 1.6 The Expert determination shall not delay the implementation of the ERTMS project.

### **2. EXPERT**

- 2.1 An Expert is a person appointed in accordance with this paragraph 2 to resolve the matter of ERTMS Part G Compensation.
- 2.2 The parties shall agree on the appointment of an independent Expert and shall agree with the Expert the terms of his appointment.
- 2.3 If the parties are unable to agree on an Expert or the terms of his appointment within seven days of either party serving details of a suggested expert on the other, either party shall then be entitled to request the Office of Rail Regulation to appoint an Expert in Part G Compensation matters, of



repute and with railway experience, and to agree with the Expert the terms of his appointment.

- 2.4 The Expert is required to prepare a written decision and give notice (including a copy of the decision) to the parties within a maximum of three months of the matter being referred to the Expert.
- 2.5 If the Expert dies or becomes unwilling or incapable of acting, or does not deliver the decision within the time required by this paragraph 2 then:
  - (a) either party may apply to the Office of Rail Regulation to discharge the Expert and to appoint a replacement Expert with the required expertise; and
  - (b) this paragraph 2 shall apply to the new Expert as if he were the first Expert appointed.
- 2.6 The parties are entitled to make submissions to the Expert including oral submissions and will provide (or procure that others provide) the Expert with such assistance and documents as the Expert reasonably requires for the purpose of reaching a decision.
- 2.7 To the extent not provided for by this paragraph 2, the Expert may in his reasonable discretion determine such other procedures to assist with the conduct of the determination as he considers just or appropriate, including (to the extent he considers necessary) instructing professional advisers to assist him in reaching his determination.
- 2.8 Each party shall with reasonable promptness supply each other with all information and give each other access to all documentation and personnel and/or things as the other party may reasonably require to make a submission under this paragraph 2.
- 2.9 The Expert shall act as an expert and not as an arbitrator. The Expert shall determine the Part G Compensation which may include any issue involving the interpretation of any provision of this contract and Part G of the Network Code, his jurisdiction to determine the matters and issues referred to him and/or his terms of reference. The Expert's written decision on the matters referred to him shall be final and binding on the parties in the absence of manifest error or fraud.
- 2.10 In determining the Part G Compensation payable to the Train Operator, the Expert shall take into account factors including the following:
  - (a) the cost of fitting ERTMS;
  - (b) the impact on train services;
  - (c) any additional Train Operator resource costs;
  - (d) any increased maintenance costs; and

(e) any compensation already agreed between the parties.

- 2.11 Each party shall bear its own costs in relation to the reference to the Expert. The Expert's fees and any costs properly incurred by him in arriving at his determination (including any fees and costs of any advisers appointed by the Expert) shall be borne by the parties equally or in such other proportions as the Expert shall direct.
- 2.12 All matters concerning the process and result of the determination by the Expert shall be kept confidential among the parties and the Expert.
- 2.13 Each party shall act reasonably and co-operate to give effect to the provisions of this paragraph 2 and otherwise do nothing to hinder or prevent the Expert from reaching his determination.

### **3. PAYMENT OF COMPENSATION**

- 3.1 The compensation determined by the Expert under this Schedule 13 shall be paid by way of the normal Part G compensation mechanisms.

**IN WITNESS** whereof the duly authorised representatives of Network Rail and the Train Operator have executed this contract on the date first above written.

Signed by .....

Print name .....

Duly authorised for and on behalf of  
**NETWORK RAIL INFRASTRUCTURE LIMITED**

Signed by .....

Print name .....

Duly authorised for and on behalf of  
**GRAND CENTRAL RAILWAY COMPANY LIMITED**

## **Conformed Copy**

## **End Notes**

### **1. 1<sup>st</sup> Supplemental Agreement dated 27 October 2014**

The amendments made to the Agreement as set out in this Supplemental Agreement shall have effect from the Effective Date.

“Effective Date” means 00:01 on 14 September 2014.

Appendix 1 of Schedule 8 will be deleted and replaced in its entirety with the version set out as Appendix 1 to this supplemental agreement.

The parties made this amendment in order to adjust the values in columns B and F of Appendix 1 to neutralise the impact of changes made to berthing offsets at Hartlepool and Wakefield Kirkgate.

### **2. 3<sup>rd</sup> Supplemental Agreement dated 5 August 2015**

The amendments made to the Contract as set out in this Supplemental Agreement shall have effect from the Effective Date and shall cease to have effect on the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

Effective Date means the later of 02:00 hours on the Principal Change Date 2015 and the date on which the parties enter into this Supplemental Agreement pursuant to directions issued by the Office of Rail Regulation under section 22 of the Act.

In Schedule 5 table 4.1 “Calling Patterns” make the following insertions:

- a) Under column 2 “Regular Calling Pattern” insert “Wakefield Kirkgate,” after “Mirfield,” and before “Pontefract Monkhill (not Sundays)” for Services from Bradford Interchange to London King’s Cross identified under Description 1.3; and
- b) Under column 2 “Regular Calling Pattern” insert “Wakefield Kirkgate,” after “Pontefract Monkhill (up to 2 services may call on Weekdays and one may call on Saturdays),” and before “Mirfield,” for Services from London King’s Cross to Bradford Interchange identified under Description 1.4.

The parties made this amendment in order to correct an error found in Schedule 5 where Wakefield Kirkgate was incorrectly deleted when the two previous contracts were merged.

### **3. 5<sup>th</sup> Supplemental Agreement dated 20 May 2016**

The amendments made to the Contract as set out in this Supplemental Agreement shall have effect from the Effective Date and shall cease to have effect on the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

Effective Date” means the later of 1 April 2016 and the first day of the next full Period that commences following the date upon which the Office of Rail and Road issues its approval pursuant to section 22 of the Act of the terms of this Supplemental Agreement (for the purposes of this Supplemental Agreement, “Period” shall have the meaning ascribed to it in Schedule 8 to the Contract).

Appendix 1 of Schedule 8 will be deleted and replaced in its entirety with the version set out as Appendix 1 to this supplemental agreement.

The parties made this amendment following a letter dated 3 November 2015 from ORR to the industry entitled: “Error in CP5 Schedule 8 passenger train operator payment rates”.

#### **4. 2<sup>nd</sup> Supplemental Agreement dated 03 March 2017**

The amendments made to the Contract as set out in this Supplemental Agreement shall have effect from the Effective Date and shall cease to have effect on the Expiry Date or earlier termination of the Contract.

Effective Date means the later of 02:00 hours on the Subsidiary Change Date in May 2017 and the date on which the ORR issues its approval pursuant to section 22 of the Act, of the terms of this Supplemental Agreement.

Schedule 1 of the Contract shall be replaced with the Schedule 1 as set out in the Annex to this Supplemental Agreement.

In Schedule 5 table 4.1 “Calling Patterns” make the following insertions:

- (a) Under column 2 “Regular Calling Pattern” insert “Low Moor” before “Halifax” for Services from Bradford Interchange to London Kings Cross identified under Description 1.3; and
- (b) Under column 2 “Regular Calling Pattern” replace “Brighouse and Halifax” with “Brighouse, Halifax and Low Moor” for Services from London Kings Cross to Bradford Interchange identified under Description 1.4.

In Schedule 7 part 2 insert a new paragraph 9.14 as follows:

“9.14 Any supplement to the Traction Electricity Modelled Consumption Rates List, Track Usage Price List or List of Capacity Charge Rates which ORR has consented to or determined pursuant to a passenger track access contract previously held by the Train Operator shall also apply to this contract.”

The parties made this amendment to Schedule 7 following an email dated 8 February 2016 from ORR, regarding price list supplement provisions, which required all train operating companies to amend, at a suitable opportunity.